This is a remake of a book that appeared 1982 at Academic Press, London
(Table of contents starts at page 3)

Preface

The question of how development is controlled is one of the challenging problems
of biology today. Many fine experiments have provided inroads into this question. However, with all this effort, the underlying mechanisms remain obscure. Many different interactions between molecules, between cells and between tissues are surely involved in the process of development. Our intuition as to how such multicomponent systems behave can be very misleading. The understanding of other complex systems, ranging from problems in economics to engineering, has been greatly advanced by the use of precise mathematical models. The properties of these models are studied by analytical considerations as well as by computer simulations and are then refined by comparison with the properties of the real system. In this book, general classes of molecular interactions that lead to biological pattern are presented along with detailed modeling of particular developmental systems. It will be shown that a relatively simple set of interactions can explain seemingly complex experimental observations in a quantitative manner. It is hoped that these theories will provide a framework for further experimental investigations and allow insights facilitating future biochemical studies. Discrepancies between these theories and these future experimental results will lead to modifications and refinements of the theories and, hence, will focus new experiments. At the present state of the art, theoretical explanations are necessarily hypothetical. They cannot deal with the enormous complexity of biological development but with a set of general features. Even if we select a particular experimental system for a detailed analysis and modeling, the selection is made
Preface

on the judgment of which features are typical for biological development as a whole and thus a test for the scope of a general theory. It has to be stressed that the selection of the biological example has a subjective component. The selection of examples chosen in this book has been made under the point of view of whether they are useful to explore the potential of simple reaction schemes capable of pattern formation (not postulating that the systems are always simple but that simple schemes provide a good first approximation). The book deals with the problem of how cells in one part of an organism become different from those of other parts. In contrast, the change of shape and form, the morphogenesis proper, which is thought to be a consequence of these primary differences, is not regarded.

It is difficult to sequence a book on developmental mechanisms. Ideas, much like developmental mechanisms, branch from one another like the limbs of a tree, but the sequence of a book is necessarily linear. The first section of the book describes mechanisms which have the ability to generate biological patterns. The following sections deal with how these mechanisms are used to generate positional information. A detailed comparison of the general theory with insect development is given. Later sections describe the generation of subpatterns, as well as how cells respond. Mechanisms for the activation of particular genes will be presented which are compatible with developmental alteration induced by a known class of mutants. The book will conclude with a collection of computer programs which allow a simulation of the assumed interactions. These programs will allow the reader to obtain a personal experience with the pattern-forming capability of these interactions.

Much has contributed to the development of these theories. Foremost is the fruitful collaboration with Dr. Alfred Gierer, who provided the initial insight concerning the necessity of autocatalytic processes. Over the years this collaboration was responsible for the excitement this work has provided me. The Max Planck Institute for Virus Research in Tübingen offered a fertile environment for these ideas to grow. My warmest thanks go to all my colleagues for helpful discussions. I also thank Hans Bode, Richard Burt, Anthony Durston, Scott Frazer and Harry MacWilliams for their patient help in the preparation of the manuscript as well as Gunilla Weintraub and Aiko Tanaka-Ingold for the drawings. This book has grown out of a previous review article (Rev. Physiol., Biochem. Pharmacol. 80:48-104, 1978) and I gratefully acknowledge the permission of Springer Verlag to incorporate some of that material here.
## Contents

1. **Introduction** 7  
   1.1 Role of theories 7

2. **Some basic features** 11  
   2.1 Spatial differences (pattern) must be generated during development 11  
   2.2 Organizing centers and their induction 12  
   2.3 Inhibitory fields 12  
   2.4 Polarity 13  
   2.5 Prepattern, gradients, morphogenetic fields 13  
   2.6 Attempts toward a theory of development 14

3. **Autocatalysis and long range inhibition** 17  
   3.1 Activator and inhibitor 19  
   3.2 Stable patterns 19

4. **Polar, symmetric and periodic patterns** 25  
   4.1 Polar and symmetrical structures 25  
   4.2 Regeneration and induction of activator maxima 28  
   4.3 Unspecific induction 29  
   4.4 Dorsoventral organization of the sea urchin embryo 30  
   4.5 Activator / inhibitor range 31  
   4.6 Periodic structures 34

5. **Polarity and size-regulation** 39  
   5.1 Activator-depleted substrate model 39  
   5.2 Inhibition of an inhibition 41  
   5.3 Polarity-determining influence of the sources 41  
   5.4 Size Regulation 43  
   5.5 Size regulation and pattern formation 46  
   5.6 Oscillations and chemotaxis 48  
   5.7 Isolation of activators and inhibitors 50

6. **Almost a summary: Hydra as a model organism** 53  
   6.1 The appearance of new heads after grafting operations 54  
   6.2 Substances influencing hydra morphogenesis 58
CONTENTS

7 Gradients .............................................. 59
  7.1 Intercalating versus non-intercalating sequences .......... 59
  7.2 Sources, sinks and the shape of the gradients .............. 60

8 Early insect development .................................. 65
  8.1 Organizer region at the posterior pole ............ 66
  8.2 leaf-hopper embryo Euscelis ......................... 68
  8.3 Double abdomen ........................................ 69
  8.4 The long range of the signal ......................... 72
  8.5 Negative size regulation .............................. 74
  8.6 Stepwise interpretation ............................... 75
  8.7 Alternative Models ...................................... 77
  8.8 Open questions ......................................... 78

9 Cooperation of compartments ................................. 81
  9.1 Fate maps and compartment borders .................... 81
  9.2 Regeneration, duplication and distal transformation .... 83
  9.3 Pattern formation at compartment borders ............. 84
  9.4 PD-positional information ............................. 86
  9.5 Stepwise unidirectional interpretation ................. 89
  9.6 Expected mutations ..................................... 90
  9.7 Strategy for isolation of the morphogen ............... 91
  9.8 Pattern regulation in insect legs ...................... 91

10 Vertebrate limbs ........................................... 95
  10.1 Polarising and competent zones ....................... 95
  10.2 Borders and polar structures .......................... 97
  10.3 Two boundaries for a limb field ...................... 97
  10.4 New limbs after manipulations ....................... 98
  10.5 Regeneration of symmetrical limbs .................... 99
  10.6 Supernumerary limbs .................................. 100
  10.7 Chicken limb bud ...................................... 102
  10.8 Relation to the polar coordinate model ............ 104
  10.9 Other organizing boundaries ......................... 105

11 Cell determination ..................................... 107
  11.1 Biochemical switches .................................. 107
  11.2 Alternative states ..................................... 109
  11.3 Pattern formation and gene activation ............... 110
  11.4 Interpretation of positional information .............. 112
  11.5 Space-dependend gene activation ..................... 112
  11.6 Proximo-distal axis of the vertebrate limb .......... 115
  11.7 proximo-distal axis of the vertebrate limb ........ 117
12 Pattern formation by lateral activation 121
  12.1 Molecular interactions ........................................ 122
  12.2 Formation of stripes ........................................... 124
  12.3 The D/V organization of insects ................................. 126
  12.4 Reestablishment of compartment borders ......................... 127
  12.5 Regeneration of planarians ..................................... 130

13 Mutual induction of locally exclusive states 133
  13.1 Pattern regulation within a segment .............................. 133
  13.2 Possible mechanisms ............................................ 134
  13.3 Chains of induction ............................................. 135
  13.4 Conditions for intercalary regeneration ......................... 136
  13.5 Organization of imaginal disks and insect legs ................ 138
  13.6 Sequence formation by induction and lateral inhibition ........ 141
  13.7 Orientation of a self-regulating sequence ....................... 143
  13.8 Other cases of mutual activation ................................ 144

14 Digits, segments, somites 145
  14.1 The formation of the periodic pattern is the primary event .... 146
  14.2 The pendulum - escapement - model .............................. 147
  14.3 The oscillation between A and P ................................ 148
  14.4 Oscillations and switching to new control genes ................. 151
  14.5 Expected phenotypes of the Bithorax complex .................... 151
  14.6 Posterior growth zone .......................................... 155
  14.7 The formation of somites ........................................ 157
  14.8 The problem of segmentation ..................................... 159
  14.9 Modification by the A-P-A alternations ......................... 161
  14.10 The advantage of the superposition ................................ 162

15 Formation of net-like structures 163
  15.1 Formation of a filament ......................................... 164
  15.2 Formation of lateral branches ................................... 166
  15.3 Limitation of maximum net density ............................... 166
  15.4 Finding a target cell ............................................ 167
  15.5 Regeneration of a net ............................................ 167
  15.6 Formation of reconnections ...................................... 168
  15.7 Variation in pattern formation ................................... 169
  15.8 Formation of a dichotomous branching pattern .................... 170
  15.9 Filaments formed by extensions of single cells .................. 172
  15.10 Known substances .............................................. 173

16 Summary and conclusion 175

17 Computer programs 179

References ................................................................. 201
Chapter 1

Introduction

1.1 Theories as necessary supplement to experimental observations

The control of development in a higher organism is one of the major unsolved problems in biology. How development has to proceed must be genetically determined. However, the genes themselves cannot directly explain the generation of differences in different parts of an organism since the genetic material in most cells of an organism can be assumed to be the same. Nor can biochemical investigations alone lead to a full understanding of development. Even an ideal biochemical analyzer which could measure the concentration of any relevant substance at any time and at any location would be limited to measuring changes in the local concentration which can then be correlated with developmental events. We would still have no insight into why these change have occurred, what the driving force is, what the cause is, and what the effect is - these questions would remain in the dark.

Most of the information about how development is controlled has been derived from experimental interference with developing systems; for instance by removal or irradiation of tissue or by transplantation of pieces into unnatural positions. The lack of knowledge about the basic mechanisms by which development is controlled is especially surprising in the view of the large amount of detailed data about how a particular organism will react after a particular experimental manipulation.

As in any other branch of science, attempts have been made to explain the observed details through the invention of hypothetical mechanisms - models - which account for the observation as well as possible. A criterion of a good model is that several seemingly unrelated observations appear as the expression of a single underlying mechanism. If the assumed mechanism is simple, fewer parameters are involved. There is then less danger that a wrong mechanism will fit the observations by the choice of convenient values of the parameters. Furthermore, it is desired that the assumed mechanism is molecularly feasible and compatible with the known laws of physics and chemistry.

To compare the experimental results to a hypothetical model, it is invaluably
helpful to have the model in a precise mathematical form. Only then discrepancies between the intuitively reasonable and the actual properties of the model, between the model and the experimental results, can be detected. Mathematically formulated models, which are usually called theories, have been a common tool in physics for a long time but still lack an adequate place in developmental biology. The superior power of a mathematically formulated model versus a verbally formulated model may be recalled by citing a well-known example from physics. The orbits of the inner planets were so precisely described by Newton’s theory that deviations found in the orbits of outer planets compelled the assumption of additional planets - which were subsequently observed. It is evident that such a prediction would never have been possible by a non-mathematical model or by precise observations alone. To give another example, the Hydrogen atom emits light at only certain defined wavelengths. It would be impossible to determine from this observation alone that the electrons are restricted to certain discrete orbits around the nucleus. It was only the precise fit of the observed spectral lines with Bohr’s model that made this hypothesis acceptable despite its variance with classical physics.

The attempt to describe the control of such a complex phenomenon as development of a higher organism with a limited number of interacting substances and, therewith, with a limited number of mathematical equations may at a first glance appear unrealistic. The situation becomes more promising if a separation into easier-to-understand submechanisms is possible. Such mechanisms are gene regulation, cell shape changes, cell movement, cell recognition by surface properties, etc. A further separation is possible with respect to different parts of an organism. For instance, the development of an arm and a leg can be regarded as independent processes. Even the anteroposterior axis and the proximodistal axis of the same vertebrate limb can be dealt with separately. However, this separation is only an approximation and a closer look reveals usually their mutual dependence. This is not surprising, since the many parts have to come together to form a harmonious entity. Therefore, one should not be surprised if a simple model, explaining precisely many features of a particular developmental system, is only an approximation. The necessary complications do not argue against the model, but should be partially expected for the integration of the individual aspects into unified systems.

In a developmental system a signaling and signal-receiving mechanism must exist which enables the cell to develop in a manner appropriate to its position. The necessity of such a signal system is easily demonstrated by the fact of regeneration. The removal of a part of an organism can elicit a signal in the remaining parts which initiates a development through a completely different pathway than normally would be followed. This, of course, must require some kind of spatial communication. The goal of this book is to show which interactions of substances can lead to such signaling systems and how the cells then can respond to these signals in order that stable states of determination are attained. The behavior of the proposed reactions will be compared with experimental observations to demonstrate that many different observations are explainable under a
1.1. **ROLE OF THEORIES**

few assumptions.
Chapter 2

Some basic features of control of development

Intensive research in developmental biology has yielded evidence for some general control mechanisms, such as: gradients (Boveri, 1901; Morgan, 1904; Child, 1929) morphallaxis and epimorphosis (Morgan, 1901), the organizer (Spemann, 1938; Child, 1946), the embryonic field (Weiss, 1939), inhibitory fields (Morgan, 1904; Schoute, 1913), embryonic induction (Spemann, 1938; Saxen and Toivonen, 1962) and positional information (Wolpert, 1969, 1971) all of which overlap one another to a greater or lesser degree. The experimental facts from which these principles are deduced have been repeatedly reviewed in recent years (Sondhi, 1963; Wolpert, 1969, 1971; Robertson and Cohen, 1971, Cooke, 1975b). There are also excellent reviews available for particular developmental systems, such as insects (Counce and Waddington, 1972; Sander, 1976; Lawrence, 1970), especially Drosophila (Ashburner and Wright, 1978) the sea urchin (Hörstadius, 1973; Czihak, 1975), planarians (Chandebois, 1976a), hydroids (Webster, 1971; Tardent and Tardent, 1980) and the vertebrate limb (Hinchliffe and Johnson, 1980).

To have a basis for the discussion of the mechanism which could be responsible for the control of development, some of these principles are briefly discussed together with some key experiments from which they have been derived.

2.1 Spatial differences (pattern) must be generated during development

Although the eggs of higher organisms have some structures, the final complexity of an organism cannot be contained in the egg in some hidden form. A separation of the two blastomeres after first cleavage of a sea urchin egg can lead to two complete and well-proportioned embryos. These eggs are therefore clearly not merely a mosaic, and the final structure must arise by an internal, self-regulatory process. Similarly, any form of regeneration requires that the intricate spatial arrangement of the regenerate is formed from less structured tissues. Therefore,
any mechanism assumed to explain development must be able to generate spatial differences from more or less homogeneous conditions.

2.2 Organizing centers and their induction

The developmental fate of a larger region is frequently controlled by a small group of cells. The implantation of a small piece of the dorsal lip of the amphibian blastopore into the ventral site of the blastula can induce the formation of a second embryo. The discovery of the amphibian organizer by Spemann and Mangold (1924) led to a great optimism that substances controlling development may be isolated. It was a very surprising and disappointing outcome that very unspecific stimuli such as the implantation of foreign or denatured tissue can also lead to an induction. Another example of an unspecific induction is the formation of a second abdomen. After puncturing or UV-irradiation of the anterior side of an egg of the midge Smittia, a second abdomen is formed there instead of a head (see Fig.8.4). Due to leakage or radiation damage, these manipulations can only lower but not increase the concentration of a particular substance. Most interestingly, in this case, the segment pattern is changed in more than one half of the egg although only less than a quarter of the egg was subjected to the experimental interference indicating the long range of determinative influence onto the surrounding tissue.

Induction of a new organizing region is frequently an all-or-nothing event. If successful, the final outcome is almost independent of the stimulus. In hydra a small piece of near-head tissue can induce a new head. Shift of posterior pole material in the egg of a leafhopper (see Fig.8.2) can induce the complete sequence of structures and especially an abdomen at unusual location. After some time, the inducing material can even be ligated off and the formation of structures proceeds further. Something has spread out from the incipient organizer and “infected” the surrounding tissue, indicating that the formation of a new organizer, once initiated, is both autonomous and self-regulating.

The term “induction” is used for at least two phenomena which have different properties and certainly a different molecular basis and should not be confused. On the one hand, it signifies the triggering of a new organizing region, as mentioned above. On the other, it denotes the formation of a new structure caused by a direct contact of at least two different cell types, the induction of a lens in the ectoderm by the outgrowing eye cup, for instance.

2.3 Inhibitory fields

The formation of a structure signifies that something is formed at a particular location which is not formed in the environment. Botanists have realized very early that each leaf primordium is surrounded by a zone where the formation of further leaves is inhibited (Schoute, 1913). The spacing of bristles of insects have also been explained in a similar way (Wigglesworth, 1940). Similarly, in hydra a
new head (or more precisely, a new hypostome) can be induced by the implantation of near-head tissue into the body column. The probability of inducing a new head decreases with decreasing distance from the existing head.-This forces the conclusion that an inhibitory effect emanates from some existing structure and that this inhibition diminishes with increasing distance from its origin. On the other hand, not every structure is surrounded by an inhibitory field. In many developmental systems, mirror-symmetrical duplications are formed. An example is the formation of a double abdomen just mentioned. At the line of symmetry, identical structures are formed close to each other, obviously without a mutual inhibition.

2.4 Polarity

Most tissues have a polarity, an asymmetric distribution of a particular property over a field of cells. Polarity can have at least three different origins: (i) the cell composition changes over the field; e.g. in a hydra, the nerve cell density is much higher in the head region as in the body column. (ii) A homogenous appearing field may in fact be subdivided in a sequence of distinguishable structures. This seems to be the case in the abdominal or in the leg segments of an insect. (iii) The individual cells are polar and aligned. The basis of an observed polarity can frequently be experimentally determined. For instance, a leg segment of an insect consists of a sequence of structures, since missing structures are replaced by intercalary regeneration. In addition, the individual cells have a proximodistal polarity indicated by the orientation of bristles. Transplantation experiments (see Fig.13.1) indicate that the sequence of structures determines the orientation of the individual cells, not the other way round. Similarly, dissociation and reaggregation experiments with hydra indicate that the cell composition, and not the orientation of individual cells is the polarity-determining factor (Fig.6.4). Polarity leads to a predictable behavior of tissue fragments. For instance, head regeneration in small fragments of planarians appears at the site oriented originally towards the head. Similarly, heads of hydra or hydrants of tubularia always appear at the distal end. Morgan (1904) concluded from experiments with tubularia that the decision to form a hydrant at a particular location results from a mutual competition of all the cells of the tissue to form that structure. He interpreted polarity as a graded advantage in this competition.

2.5 Prepattern, gradients, morphogenetic fields, positional information and sequences of structures

If a new structure emerges during development, this may be caused directly by a communication between cells or could result from a two-step process in which a localized high concentration of a ”morphogen” is first formed, which in turn initiates the determination and differentiation at that particular area. In the
latter case, the morphogen distribution may be considered as a pre- or primary pattern which precedes the structure to be formed.

Evidence for the existence of a prepattern has been derived from rather different organisms. With genetic mosaics, Stern (1956) has shown for bristle-formation in Drosophila that mutants exist in which the response of the cells but not the formation of the prepattern is altered, indicating clearly the separation of the two processes. In hydra, after removal of a head, a new head appears at about 48 hours. However, important changes take place in the future head region within the first four hours after head removal. Transplantation of small pieces of tissue from the prospective head region into the body column of another animal lead to different results depending whether the transplantation is performed immediately or after about four hours. Only in the latter case, a new head will be induced (Webster and Wolpert, 1966). The four-hour time interval is probably too short to allow much cell differentiation but is long enough for the local production of a substance which initiates head formation even after transplantation into a new environment.

A prepattern can determine more than one structure if the morphogen is not used for an all-or-nothing decision. A graded distribution of a morphogenetic substance can specify a sequence of structures as a function of the local morphogen concentration. Wolpert (1969, 1971) has generalized this idea in the concept of positional information. Such a mechanism has been suggested by investigations on the anteroposterior axis of insects (Counce and Waddington, 1972; Sander, 1976), the dorsoventral axis of insects (Nüsslein-Volhard, 1979; Nüsslein-Volhard et al., 1980), the organization of the anteroposterior axis of amphibian limb (Slack, 1977a,b) and of the chicken wing bud (Tickle et al., 1975). These systems suggest that a long-ranging signal exists which spreads out from a small group of cells - the organizing region.

In other cases, the spatial arrangement seems not to be controlled by a two step process: generation of positional information and its interpretations but results from a direct and short-ranging communication of adjacent cells controlling in this way the correct neighborhoods. The organization of an individual insect segment (see Fig.13.1) seems to be of this type.

2.6 Attempts toward a theory of development

Development must be ultimately a biochemical process, consisting of interactions and movement of molecules. Turing (1952) made the very important discovery that spatial concentration patterns can be formed if two substances with different diffusion rates react with each other. This is very contrary to our intuition since with diffusion one associates a smoothing of any local accumulation of molecules but not the creation of such concentration maxima. To make analytical solutions possible, Turing had linearized his equations, which led to some stability problems. In respect to non-linear equations he wrote (Turing, 1952, p.72) “The difficulties are, however, such one cannot hope to have any very embracing theory of such process, beyond the statement of the equations. It might be pos-
sible, however, to treat a few particular cases in detail with the aid of a digital computer. This method has the advantage that it is not so necessary to make simplifying assumption as it is when doing a more theoretical type of analysis.” Numerical solutions of Turing’s non-linear equations show periodic distributions that are stable in time (Martinez, 1972). Meanwhile, many attempts have been made to mathematically analyse of such reaction-diffusion mechanisms (see, for instance, Gmitro and Scriven, 1966; Kopell and Howard, 1973; Bard and Lander, 1974; Babloyantz and Hiernaux, 1975; Granero et al., 1977; Fife, 1979; Lacalli and Harrison, 1979). The connection of this type of reaction with irreversible thermodynamics has been worked out by Prigogine and Nicolis (1971). The importance of the amplification of small deviation from an average for all sorts of pattern formation (also non-biological) has been pointed out by Maruyama (1963). A basically different mechanism for the generation of sequences of structures has been proposed by Goodwin and Cohen (1969) based on the phase difference of two waves, propagating with different velocities. By considering known principles of biological development - the fields of inhibition and the possibility of local induction - we have shown that short range autocatalysis coupled with long range inhibition give rise to spatial concentration pattern with features known from biological systems (Gierer and Meinhardt, 1972, 1974; Meinhardt and Gierer, 1974; Gierer, 1977a,b, Meinhardt, 1978a). Such interactions can be given a mathematically precise form of coupled differential equations which allow molecular interpretations. This principle allows to predict even for highly non-linear interaction whether or not a stable pattern can be formed. The properties of these systems will be illustrated by comparing their behavior (numerical solutions of the differential equations) with a large variety of biological observations. We will examine these models further in the following sections.
Chapter 3

Self-enhancement (autocatalysis) and long range inhibition - a general mechanism of pattern formation

One of the most fascinating aspects of development is the generation of structures from a more or less homogeneous egg. This was felt to be so miraculous that a long argument arose as to whether the laws of physics were sufficient for an explanation of development. Driesch, for example (see Herbst, 1942) - who made such great discoveries, i.e. that the cell nuclei in a developing sea urchin egg are totipotent and therefore the interaction of cytoplasm with the nuclei is decisive for the developmental pathway - believed in a vital power which was assumed to be unexplainable by physical laws.

However, a look at inorganic nature reveals that formation of pattern is not peculiar to living objects. Pattern formation is the rule also in the non-living world. Formation of galaxies, stars, clouds, rain drops, lightning, river systems, mountains, crystals, all forms of erosion - all testify to the generation of ordered structures (Fig.3.1). It is instructive to look for common principles in the generation of these structures. If a small deviation from a homogeneous distribution has a strong positive feedback on itself, the deviation will increase. For example, erosion proceeds faster at the location of some random initial injury and sharp contoured rivers are formed despite that the rain was distributed almost homogeneously over the country. A large sand dune may result from a stone in a desert which produces a wind shelter and may thus locally accelerate the deposition of sand; this deposition increases the probability of further sand deposition, and so on.

As well as the strong positive feedback - autocatalysis - another element is required for pattern formation: lateral inhibition. Once an autocatalytic center has arisen, a suppression of the autocatalysis in the neighbourhood must occur, otherwise the reaction would spread like a grassfire. In a grassfire, all of the available fuel in an area would be converted to ashes, leaving no pattern to the
CHAPTER 3. AUTOCATALYSIS AND LONG RANGE INHIBITION

Figure 3.1: Pattern formation in non-living nature, based on self-enhancing (autocatalytic) processes. (a) *Sand dunes* may arise from a sand deposit behind a small wind shelter; this deposit increases the wind shelter and thereby accelerates further deposition. (b) *Erosion* proceeds faster at some injury. More water collects in the incipient valleys, accelerating the erosion there. (c) *Thunderstorm clouds*: Warmed up air expands, becomes lighter and moves upwards. There, the surrounding air is even colder and this accelerates the upstream. (d) *Waves* in layers of down-streaming water are formed despite a uniform rainfall. The speed of the water depends on friction with the ground. A thicker layer has less friction and is therefore faster. Any local increase leads to a local acceleration and the water then catches up with water already further down, amplifying the local increase and the speed further. (e) *Lightning* with sharp contours are formed despite the fact that charged clouds are diffuse. Under the influence of the voltage-difference ions are accelerated, producing more ions by collision with other atoms, leading to an avalanche effect. In all these situations, an effect of lateral inhibition is involved too. If the sand or water accumulates at a particular location, it is depleted at others. The upstreams at some location necessitates down streams at others.

landscape. The strong short-range positive feedback must therefore be supplemented by a longer-range negative feedback. In inorganic pattern formation, the antagonistic reaction to the self-enhancement is in most cases based on an using up of a movable prerequisite. Examples are given in Fig.3.1. Pattern formation requires energy. The wind has to blow to form a sand dune; water has to be evaporated to form clouds, raindrops and rivers.

An indication that the same principle - local autocatalysis and lateral inhibition - is involved in biological pattern formation may be seen in the appearance of additional heads in hydra. As mentioned, a small piece of tissue which was derived from near the head and grafted into the body column can form (together with some adjacent tissue) a second head. The development of the complete new head was initiated by a small disturbance. After a while, the implanted tissue can even be removed, and the induced head formation proceeds autonomously.
Something has "infected" the surrounding tissue which is then able to form the new head on its own. If this infection takes place - why is not the whole hydra infected? The existing head has an inhibitory influence on the induction of a secondary head which limits the spreading of the infection. The inhibition is highest in the head area but is detectable throughout the animal. We will discuss this system in more details in chapter 6.

### 3.1 Activator and inhibitor

To apply this principle on biochemical reactions, let us assume a substance - to be called activator \( a \) - which stimulates its own production (autocatalysis) and the production of its antagonist - the inhibitor \( h \). To carry out the necessary long-range inhibition, the inhibitor must diffuse more rapidly. In an extended field of cells a homogeneous distribution of these substances is unstable, since any small local elevation of the activator concentration - resulting perhaps from random fluctuations - will be amplified by the activator autocatalysis. The inhibitor, which is produced in response to the increasing activator production, cannot halt the local increased activator production, since it diffuses quickly into the surrounding tissue and suppresses activator production outside the activated center. Thus, the locally increased activator concentration will increase further, with increasing concentration, the maximum becomes narrower and narrower until some limiting factor comes into play, for instance, the loss of activator from the narrow peak by diffusion becomes equal to the net production. A stable activator and inhibitor profile is ultimately obtained, although both the substances continue to be made, to diffuse, and to be broken down. Such a simple system of two interacting substances is, therefore, able to produce a stable, strongly patterned distribution from a nearly homogeneous initial distribution, as it occurs in biological pattern formation. As demonstrated below, the resulting pattern can be monotonic or periodically varying over a region depending on the parameters such as diffusion and lifetime of the substances involved. The extension of an area with a high substance concentration can be proportional to the total size. The pattern can be stable or oscillating in time, the location of a high concentration can be directed by minor internal or external asymmetries. An active center which has been removed can “regenerate”. A second center can be induced by rather unspecific manipulations. An activator center therefore has the essential properties of a classical organizer.

### 3.2 Interactions which lead to stable patterns

Development is alteration in time. Assuming that development is controlled by substances, any theory of development has to describe concentration changes of substances as function of other substances involved and as function of spatial coordinates and time.

Two conditions have to be fulfilled before a stable pattern can be generated.
(i) A local deviation from an average concentration should increase further, otherwise no pattern would be formed, and (ii) the increase should not go to infinity. Instead, the emerging pattern should reach a stable steady state. This is possible if an increase in one part is necessarily connected with a decrease in another part of the field. The effect of this is that the total amount of substances in the field are roughly conserved.

Let us think of the simplest possible interactions which can lead to a stable pattern. The reader not familiar with mathematical expressions should not be worried about the following differential equations. An equation is an unambiguous expression of what the hypothesis is. We will not discuss any mathematical problems but use the equations as a shorthand of the assumed interactions. In most of the equations, a change per time unit is described. For instance, \( \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \) denotes the change of a per time unit. The overall time course of a concentration is calculated by an integration of such differential equation. That means, the concentration change after a short time interval is added to a given initial condition, leading to a new concentration profile, determining the following change, which is added again, and so on.

The simplest assumption one can make about the disappearance of the molecules is that the number of decaying or escaping molecules is proportional to the number of molecules present \( \left( \frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = -\mu a \right) \) similar as to the number of individuals dying per day in a city depends on the number of people living there. Concerning the communication of a cell with its neighbours, a simple assumption is diffusion. Let us assume a cell \( i \) with two neighbours, \( i - 1 \) and \( i + 1 \). The corresponding concentrations are \( a_i \) etc. The net exchange between two cells depends on the concentration difference, e.g. \( a_{i-1} - a_i \). The gain or the loss of the cell \( i \) from or to its left and right neighbors is therefore \( D_a ((a_{i-1} - a_i) + (a_{i+1} - a_i)) \) where \( D_a \) is the diffusion constant. In a linear concentration gradient, the net exchange is zero since a cell loses by diffusion the same amount to the lower neighbor as it gains from the higher neighbor. If the space is continuous and a subdivision into individual cells is impossible, this expression is proportional to the second derivative. That is \( D_a \frac{\partial^2 a}{\partial x^2} \).

If such simple modes of decay and redistributions are assumed, the critical terms for the pattern-forming reactions are the production terms as function of the other substances involved. We have derived a general criterion about which interaction lead to a stable pattern and which do not (Gierer and Meinhardt, 1972). Assuming an activator \( a \) and an inhibitor \( h \), the following example satisfies this condition:

\[
\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = \frac{\rho a^2}{h} - \mu a + D_a \frac{\partial^2 a}{\partial x^2} \tag{3.1a}
\]

\[
\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} = \rho'a^2 - \nu h + D_h \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} \tag{3.1a}
\]

We can easily gain some intuition about why this reaction leads to a pattern. First let us look at eq.(3.1a) and assume that the inhibitor concentration is
constant (and arbitrarily equal 1) and that activator distribution is uniform (no change by diffusion). Setting the constant $c$, $\mu$ and $\mu$ arbitrarily to unity, we get

$$\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = a^2 - a.$$  

We get a steady state ($\partial a/\partial t = 0$) at $a = 1$. However, this steady state is unstable. For example, if $a$ is slightly larger then 1, $\partial a/\partial t$ is positive, that means, $a$ will increase further. To achieve this instability, it is obvious that the production term has to be of higher order than the linear decay term, which means, non-linear. By itself, such autocatalysis would lead to an overall explosion.

Now let us include eq.(3.1b). The inhibitor production is controlled solely by the activator concentration present in the system. Let us assume a very rapid equilibration of the inhibitor to a given activator concentration. At the steady state ($\partial h/\partial t = 0$) the inhibitor concentration will be $h = a^2$. Inserting this into eq.3.1 we get

$$\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = \frac{a^2}{a^2} - a = 1 - a$$

and again a steady state at $a = 1$. This steady state is stable since, for instance, if $a$ is larger than 1, $\partial a/\partial t$ is negative and therefore the deviation from the equilibrium will be regulated back to $a = 1$.

So far we have two extreme cases, either stability or instability, depending on whether we include the action of the inhibitor or not. By a convenient choice of diffusion rates we can achieve local instability with overall stability of the system. As discussed in the last section, the autocatalysis must be a more or less local process while the inhibition must spread out rapidly. If we now follow a local activator increase, this leads according to (3.1) to a locally increased inhibitor production. However, due to the high diffusion rate, the inhibitor surplus becomes widely distributed. Therefore, despite the local activator increase, the inhibitor concentration can be regarded as constant and this leads, as we have seen, to a further increase of the activator: The pattern begins to form (Fig.3.2b).

With further local activator increase, the inhibitor concentration can no longer be considered as constant. Its overall increase leads to a decrease of the activator production outside of the activated area. Also at the activated site, the activator increase is restricted since, as the developing maximum becomes steeper and steeper, the loss by diffusion increases and the surrounding “cloud” of inhibitor finally stabilizes the pattern.

This local high concentration can be used as a signalling system, for instance, to initiate head formation in hydra. A pattern formed in this way has strong self-regulatory properties. For instance, after removal of the activated area, the remaining inhibitor decays and the activator maximum “regenerates” via autocatalysis (Fig.3.2c).

For many calculations shown in this book, Eq.(3.1) is used with a few additions which play an important role in the theoretical description of real biological systems.
CHAPTER 3. AUTOCATALYSIS AND LONG RANGE INHIBITION

Figure 3.2: Generation and regeneration of a pattern. (a) The reaction: Assumed is an autocatalytic substance - the activator (A) - and its more rapidly diffusing antagonist - the inhibitor (H). (b,c) Pattern formation in a linear array of cells. In this and most of the following figures, the activator (top) and inhibitor concentration (below) in a linear array of cells is plotted as function of position and time. (b) A completely uniform distribution of both substances is stable, an artificial activator increase (arrow) disappears following a compensating increase in the inhibitor concentration. But a small local activator increase or even a random fluctuation cannot be compensated, since the additionally produced inhibitor diffuses quickly into the surroundings. In the slightly activated region, the activator concentration increases further until a steady state is reached in which the gain by production and the loss by diffusion and decay is balanced. (c) Such a pattern has strong self-regulatory properties, e.g. it can "regenerate". With the removal of the activator maximum, the remnant inhibitor decays and a new maximum is formed via autocatalysis. Depending on how much of the former activator maximum is included in the fragment, the polarity can be maintained (c) or reversed (see Fig.4.4 and 4.7).

\[
\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = \frac{\rho a^2}{h (1 + \kappa a^2)} - \mu a + D_a \frac{\partial^2 a}{\partial x^2} + \rho \rho_0 \quad (3.2a)
\]

\[
\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} = \rho' a^2 - \nu h + D_h \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \rho' \rho_1 \quad (3.2b)
\]

The small basic (activator-independent) activator production \(\rho_0\) can initiate the autocatalysis in areas of low activator concentration. As we will see, this term is important if new centers are to arise during growth or regeneration. In contrast, the basic inhibitor production \(\rho_1\) can suppress the appearance of secondary maxima, a feature which is important if an ordered sequence of structures is to be specified by positional information (p. 67). The factor \(\rho\) denotes the source density. Its polarity-determining influence will be discussed on p. 41. If the activator production saturates at a high concentration due to a term \(1/(1 + \kappa a^2)\), the activated area is size-regulated (p. 43).

Eq.(3.2) is of course only an example. The general condition of local instability and stable average concentration provides an easy check whether a particular reaction will lead to a stable pattern or not. For instance, a linear stimulation of the inhibitor production by the activator but a non-linear action of the inhibitor leads to stable pattern as well (Eq.3.3).
This interaction allows an interesting molecular interpretation: the activator molecule decays or is converted into an inactive molecule which acts as inhibitor, since it is in competition with the undegraded activator molecules.

Other molecular realizations of the principle of autocatalysis and lateral inhibition are possible. For instance, the inhibitory effect may be realized by a depletion of a substrate or of a precursor which is consumed in the autocatalysis. This reaction has some properties different from the reaction scheme eq. (3.2) which could allow a distinction on the basis of experimental observations (see p. 39). The autocatalysis may be realized by the mutual inhibition of two substances (p. 109). Further, the autocatalysis can be a reaction chain consisting of many elements or can be realized by an autocatalytic release of bound substances rather than by a control of the production. To achieve necessary nonlinearity of eq. (3.2), two activator molecules can form a dimer or can cause an allosteric shift which releases a further activator molecule. A single inhibitor molecule would block such release. The redistribution of the inhibiting substance by diffusion may be enhanced by convection.

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} &= \frac{\rho a^2}{h^2} - \mu a + D_a \frac{\partial^2 a}{\partial x^2} \\
\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} &= \rho'a - \nu h + D_h \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2}
\end{align*}
\] (3.3a)
Chapter 4

Polar, symmetric and periodic patterns - basic properties of an activator-inhibitor system

4.1 Generation of polar and symmetrical structures

The mechanism of pattern formation requires that the inhibitor diffuses more rapidly than does the activator. Let us first assume a linear array of cells. In an area small compared to the range of the activator (that is the mean distance between the production and decay of the activator molecule), the different diffusion rates cannot come into play since both substances equilibrate rapidly in the small field. Therefore, in a small field, only a homogeneous distribution at a well-defined concentration is possible.

In a growing field (or in a field in which the diffusion rates decrease, for instance, by a progressive cleavage), the homogeneous distribution becomes quite abruptly unstable and a stable graded concentration pattern emerges. For biological applications it is important that at first only a marginal (asymmetric) activator maximum is possible or, in other words, that graded distributions are formed (Fig.4.1a). This is due to the fact that a marginal activator maximum requires space for only one activator slope, while a central maximum would require space for two slopes which is not available when the critical size is just reached.

The orientation of the emerging pattern is usually determined by internal or external asymmetries. The eggs of most species mature in an asymmetric environment and become in themselves non-homogeneous, which directs the pattern in a predictable way and no symmetry breaking is required. A rare exception is the almost homogeneous egg of the brown algea *Fucus* (Fig.4.2). The development of the spherical egg begins with the outgrowth of a so-called rhizoid at one particular side. The outgrowth can be directed by light, electric current, differences in pH or temperature between the different sides of the egg, or by mutual attraction from other nearby eggs (Jaffe, 1968). This supports the view that there is an unstable situation and that any asymmetry can orient the pattern formation. In the absence of any orienting effect, the outgrowth appears at random but much
Figure 4.1: Formation of polar and symmetric pattern. (a) A monotonically graded distribution of the activator and inhibitor is formed in a growing field of linearly arranged cells. A pattern can only be formed when a critical size (range of activator) is exceeded. At the critical size the maximum can appear only at one boundary and can remain there upon further growth. Therefore, the model explains the formation of polar concentration profiles, even from an initially near-homogeneous situation. (b,c) At larger extensions of the field, the formation of symmetrical patterns is favored even if the initial distributions are clearly asymmetric. Minor differences are decisive whether a maximum appears at the center or at both margins. Experimental interference during development leads frequently to an abnormal symmetric pattern, e.g. in *Fucus* (Fig. 4.2), in sea urchins (Fig. 4.3), in stolons of hydroids (Fig. 4.7) and in insects (Fig. 8.4).

delayed. This is also in agreement with the proposed mechanism, since the time required for the formation on an activator peak is shorter for larger deviations from the semistable equilibrium.

In a field of the size comparable to the activator range, the activator maximum depends on the total size of the field, whereas in larger fields, it becomes only a small fraction of the total field and is almost size-independent. Therefore, it could be favorable for biological systems to utilize fields much larger than the activator range. Organizing centers with properties of an activator maximum, for instance, the amphibian organizer or the activation center in insects (see Fig. 8.1) occupy indeed only a small part of the field.

To maintain a simple polar pattern during further growth or shrinkage of the diffusion range, it is required that (i) the maximum remains at the margin and (ii) that no secondary maxima are formed. The first requirement can be satisfied in an activator-inhibitor system, but creates problems in pattern forming systems which are based on the depletion of a precursor (Fig. 5.1). The appearance of secondary maxima can be prevented by a baseline inhibitor production ($\rho_1$; Eq. 3.2) which enables a second steady state at low activator concentration. This low steady state is stable as long as a critical activator concentration is not surpassed. Such a safeguard mechanism against secondary maxima has its price. The basic inhibitor level can suppress the “regeneration” of an activator maximum. Perhaps the lack of “regeneration” after complete removal of the “activation center” at the
4.1. POLAR AND SYMMETRICAL STRUCTURES

Figure 4.2: Outgrowth of the brown algae *Fucus*. As a rare case, the egg of the brown alga *Fucus* has almost no internal asymmetry. The normal outgrowth (a-d) can be oriented by differences of temperature, pH, light or electric potential. (e) Illumination of an egg with polarized light (the arrows indicate the plane of vibration of the electric vector) can lead to a symmetric outgrowth. (f) The influence from other eggs is sufficient to orient the outgrowth. Drawn after Jaffe (1968).

posterior pole of an insect egg (see Fig.8.1) has this origin. The baseline inhibitor level offers the possibility that the gradient-forming mechanism is “asleep” until a particular developmental stage is reached independent of the extension of the size of the field; an example for this will be given in Fig.4.8b.

If a gradient system is disturbed when a larger size is already obtained, a symmetric distribution is favored. The high activation appears either at the center or at both margins. After such a disturbance, the distributions may still be quite asymmetric but the self-regulatory features lead to one of the two symmetric forms (or re-establish the monotonic distribution). Minor differences can be decisive which of the few possible patterns will develop. Symmetric development has been observed after experimental disorganization. E.g. after centrifugation of insect eggs a development of symmetric embryos with either two abdomina or two head lobes occur, the latter with surprisingly little further segmentation (Yajima, 1960; Rau and Kalthoff, 1980).

In a two-dimensional field of a size comparable the activator range, a graded distribution in one dimension and a constant distribution in the other dimension can be formed (Fig.4.3). As a rule, the gradient will be oriented in the direction of the largest extension of the field. The mechanism offers therefore a possibility to detect the longest dimension of a field and to organize it. A sequential formation of gradients enables the formation of orthogonal coordinate systems (Fig.4.3). An alternative mechanism which allows gradient formation along a small axis of a field will be discussed later. It depends on lateral activation of two substances (Fig.12.4).
CHAPTER 4. POLAR, SYMMETRIC AND PERIODIC PATTERNS

Figure 4.3: Formation of a graded distribution in a two-dimensional field. (a-c) When the size of the field is of the order of the activator range, the maximum appears at one boundary (similar to that in Fig 3.2 and 4.1). Minor asymmetries can orient the gradient. The alignment occurs preferentially along the longest extension of the field. A sequential pattern formation and interpretation (p.?) can generate orthogonal coordinate systems. For instance, under the influence of the gradient, the field is subdivided into narrower stripes (A, B in d), and the pattern reorients itself perpendicular to the original orientation (e,f) despite the initial asymmetry within the two parts. Autocatalysis and lateral inhibition is therefore convenient to organize the long antero-posterior axis of an insect egg (g). For the shorter dorsoventral axis (h), an initial subdivision into stripe-like “segments” would be required. (i) A biological example for the orientation of a pattern by the change of the geometrical form is the orientation of the dorsoventral (D-V) axis of a sea urchin embryo by squeezing it through a capillary. The front side of the sausage-like deformed embryo usually becomes the ventral pole. In some cases, symmetrical embryos are formed (Lindahl, 1932).

4.2 Regeneration and induction of activator maxima

The local high concentration of the activator or inhibitor can serve as a signal to form a particular structure. It can, for instance, initiate cell differentiation or tissue evagination. Characteristic of many embryonic systems is their ability to regenerate parts after removal. One possibility is a reprogramming of the remaining tissue (morphallaxis) for which the model provides an explanation. With the removal of the activated site, also the site of inhibitor production is removed, the remaining inhibitor decays and via autocatalysis a new maximum is formed (see Fig.3.2c). The autocatalysis requires that at least some activator is present, originating either from the remaining activator or from a small leakage-like baseline activator production ($\rho_0$ in Eq.3.2). The self-regulating activator-inhibitor system is therefore able to ensure that at least one “organizing region” is present in the field. The regeneration of a hydra head (Fig.6.2) or the ventral side of a sea urchin (Fig.4.4) are examples and will be discussed below in more detail.

If the size of the field is large enough to accommodate more than one activator slope, additional maxima can be induced either by a small local increase of activator, realized for instance by the implantation of activated tissue or unspecifically by the removal of inhibitor. The probability to induce a secondary maximum
4.3. UNSPECIFIC INDUCTION

Figure 4.4: Reversal of the dorsoventral polarity in a fragment of a sea urchin embryo. (a-c) Experimental evidence: Separation of the dorsal and ventral half of a sea urchin embryo in the 16-cell or in the early blastula stage; the cells close to the area of separation are mildly vitally stained (speckles in figure a). In the pluteus larvae, both stained regions form a dorsal site, indicating a polarity reversal in one of the fragments. The more advanced development of the ventral side indicates that it is the original dorsal half which has reverted the polarity (see Hörstadius, 1973) (d) Explanation in terms of the model. The development of an activator-inhibitor distribution after a separation in an activated and in a non-activated fragment is shown. In the latter, the new activation is formed at the side with the lowest concentration of remaining inhibitor (arrow) and therefore with a reversed orientation.

with a given stimulus is expected to depend strongly on the distance between the site of manipulation and the natural organizer (activator maximum), since the local stimulation has to overcome the inhibition arising from the maximum. A removal of the existing maximum facilitates the induction of a new activator maximum considerably, since after such removal, the level of inhibition drops in the field. The possible induction of a new maximum is an all-or-none event, the final maximum is independent of the mode of stimulation. The concentration of activator increases via autocatalysis only if sufficient activator is present to overcome the inhibition from the existing maximum. This developing maximum will increase until it comes to a steady state with the self-produced inhibitor. In this process, tissue in the environment of the stimulated site can be “infected” to participate in the autocatalysis. Therefore, after a period of contact, the inducing tissue can be withdrawn and nevertheless the formation of a second maximum proceeds autonomously.

4.3 Unspecific induction

After the discovery by Spemann and Mangold (1924) that the dorsal lip of the amphibian blastula can induce a second embryo, much enthusiasm arose concerning isolation of substances which are responsible for the induction. As mentioned,
it was surprising and disappointing to discover that very unspecific stimuli lead to an induction; even cell poisoning, injury, or implantation of killed or foreign tissues is sufficient. Waddington et al. (1936) proposed that this unspecificity results from the removal of an inhibitor. In the model, a local activator maximum is necessarily surrounded by a field of inhibition; the inhibition decreases with distance from the maximum. At higher distances, any artificial decrease can induce a new activation. Possible mechanisms for inhibitor decrease include leakage at an injury, breakdown due to a release of degrading enzymes, or destruction of inhibitor-producing structures by UV irradiation. The UV induction of the double abdomen malformation during early insect development (Fig. 8.4) will be given later as an example. Unspecific induction indicates that in these systems the inhibitory effect is derived from a real inhibitor and not from a depletion of a precursor (see p.?). Unspecifically one can only destroy and not create molecules. Only the decrease of an inhibitor, not of a precursor or an activator can trigger the formation of a new maximum.

4.4 An example: the dorsoventral organization of the sea urchin embryo

The dorsoventral axis of a sea urchin embryo shows many properties of an activator-inhibitor system. While the animal-vegetal (p.?) axis of a sea urchin egg is fixed during oogenesis, the orientation of the dorsoventral (D-V) axis can be reoriented by mild external influences and the D-V pattern can regulate (for experimental details and literature, see Höorstadius, 1973; Czihak, 1975). After the first two cleavages of the developing egg, the four blastomers are arranged like slices of an orange, each containing material from the animal as well as from the vegetal pole. Isolated blastomers of a 4-cell stage embryo develop into small but complete larvae (Driesch, 1900) indicating that in each blastomer a new D-V axis is established (and that size regulation takes place). The reversed experiment is also possible. Two eggs pressed together can develop into only one very large embryo (Driesch, 1899; Boveri, 1901). The D-V axis can be reoriented by external manipulations. Local application of metabolism-inhibiting substances causes the formation of the dorsalmost area at this location, indicating that, in terms of the proposed model, it is the ventral side which corresponds to the activated area. After stretching of the cleaving egg, the D-V axis is oriented parallel to the artificial long axis (Lindahl, 1932). We have seen already in Fig.4.3 the strong tendency of an activator-inhibitor pattern to orient itself according to the long extension of a field of cells. Minor asymmetries are decisive as to which end becomes the ventral side. For instance, the stretching can be accomplished by pressing the egg through a fine pipette, deforming it in a sausage-like manner. Usually it is the leading end which forms the ventral side (Fig.4.3). If this end is poisoned by extensive staining with Nile Blue, the trailing end will form the ventral side.

After separation of a 16-cell embryo into a ventral and a dorsal half, the
ventral half maintains its orientation, while in the dorsal half the D-V orientation is reversed. The originally dorsalmost area changes to the ventralmost area, while both the new dorsal areas are formed from material originally facing each other (Fig. 4.4). This is in good agreement with the proposed model, since the original dorsal area was exposed to the lowest inhibitor concentration. Therefore, after separation, the originally dorsalmost area becomes the newly activated (ventral) side. Condition for such a reversal is that the tissue is isotropic. As we will see later, in many tissues a very stable graded tissue property exists — the polarity proper — which orients a regenerating activator maximum according to this internal polarity (Figs. 5.2, 6.2, 6.3). Only in the absence of such a stable internal polarity, the transient gradient of the remaining inhibitor is able to reorient the regenerating activator pattern.

The reversal of orientation in the dorsal half can take place also after a more extensive stretching but without a physical separation of both halves (Fig. 4.3i). In terms of the model, the distance between the activated (ventral) and non-activated (dorsal) site becomes so large that a second activation at the dorsal site can be no longer inhibited and a symmetrical embryo results. The reversal of the D-V axis in a dorsal half offers decisive evidence against the assumption that the overall orientation results from the alignment of individual polar elements arranged like the dipoles of a magnet (Driesch, 1900). In that physical analogy, each fragment of a magnet would retain its polarity.

4.5 Ranges of the activator and inhibitor in stolons of marine hydroids

Another biological system in which the basic features of the induction and maintenance of a structure can be easily compared with the expectations from the activator-inhibitor model are the colony-forming marine hydroids such as *Hy-
dractinia or Eirene viridula. The animals are interconnected by a branching network of hollow tubes, the so-called stolons (Fig.4.5). A stolon elongates at a growing tip. A new branch can arise only at a distance of at least 400 µm from the tip. This suggests that the formation of a new tip is based on the formation of a new activator maximum and that the long-range inhibition emanating from the existing tip is responsible for the minimum spacing. If a growing tip touches an existing stolon, the mechanical stimulus induces a second tip at the existing stolon. After a while, the two stolons fuse and in this way an anastomosis is formed. A weak local pressure is therefore a natural stimulus for the initiation of a new tip. This pressure-sensitivity has been used by Plickert (1980) to measure the range of the fields. A new tip can be induced by a mechanical indentation at a distance of ca. 230 µm behind the tip. If two stimuli are given very closely together (150 µm), then, in most cases only one tip is formed and it appears at a position in between the two stimuli. Thus, the location of the stimulus and the location of the outgrowth is not the same. This shows that the mechanical touch initiates a process which becomes independent of the stimulus. In the model, if two activator maxima are initiated too close to each other, the growing peaks would fuse at an intermediate position (Fig.4.6a). The distance at which this averaging of stimuli is possible would correspond roughly to the range of the activator. At a somewhat larger distance of the two stimuli (200 µm), again only one tip is formed. But in this case, it appears at the location of one of the two stimuli. The other becomes suppressed. At even larger distances (280 µm), both stimuli are successful. This distance coresponds to the range of the inhibitor.
4.5. ACTIVATOR / INHIBITOR RANGE

Figure 4.7: Regeneration in reverted orientation in fragments of a stolon of a marine hydroid (*Eirene*) (Müller and Plickert, 1982). (a) Depending on the distance from an existing tip, a fragment of a stolon can either regenerate with the same polarity (←→), in a reversed polarity (→←) or in a symmetric way (←→). (b-e) Model: The normal tip is assumed to be controlled by an activator-inhibitor system. If some activator is included in the fragment (close to the tip), regeneration occurs according to the normal orientation (b). At larger distances, the graded inhibitor distribution leads to a reversal of orientation (d). In between these two areas, a narrow zone of transition exist in which a symmetrical development is most probable (c). At very large distances, symmetrical development occurs again since the influence of the inhibitor is too small (e). The simulations are made under the assumption that, in addition to diffusion, some of the inhibitor is distributed instantaneously by convection.

The simulations (Fig.4.6) show that behavior is correctly described by the model.

Small fragments of a stolon regenerate. Three patterns are possible (Müller and Plickert, 1982): (i) the new tip arises at the side pointing towards the original tip, (ii) the new tip is formed at the other end, leading to a reversal of orientation and (iii) both open ends form a new tip, leading to symmetrical development. The frequency at which these three possible types are formed changes drastically with the distance of the fragment from an original tip (Fig.4.7); small distances lead to regenerates with normal orientation, larger distances lead preferentially to a reversal of orientation, and very large distances lead to symmetrical regenerates. In terms of the model, near-tip fragments can contain a fraction of the original activator maxima. This will direct the regenerating maxima according to the original orientation. Therefore the probability of having normally oriented regenerates reflects the activator concentration remaining in the fragment. It shows the expected steep decrease with distance from the original tip. At a larger distance, the only clue for the regeneration of the activator pattern would be the graded inhibitor distribution. In such a fragment, the lowest inhibitor concentration is at the side opposite to the original tip side. It will regenerate with a reversed orientation analogous to the orientation of the dorsoventral orientation of the dorsal half of a sea urchin embryo (Fig.4.4). The probability of regenerating with reversed orientation is a measure for the inhibitor gradient remaining in the fragment. As shown in Fig.4.7, the probabilities, as observed through experiments, for normal and reverted regeneration are distributed similar as the activator and inhibitor in the model proposed. Though the substances are not yet isolated, the experimental interference and the following regulation allows to determine their approximate distributions.
Figure 4.8: Formation of periodic structures in space. Several activator maxima can emerge if the range of the inhibitor is smaller than the size of the field. A linear assembly of cells is assumed. (a) Regular spacing of peaks occur if pattern formation works during growth. New maxima appear in an area remote from existing maxima since the inhibition is too low there to suppress the onset of autocatalysis. Marginal growth at both ends is assumed and new maxima are added in the region of growth. (b) A somewhat irregular pattern arises if the pattern formation begins to work only after a certain size has been observed. The maxima first appear too close together and some are finally suppressed. A certain maximum and minimum distance is observed.

4.6 Periodic structures

The possibility for the generation of periodic structures by coupled biochemical reactions has been shown in the pioneering paper of Turing (1952). In the proposed theory, periodic structures can be formed if the total area becomes larger than the range of the activator; a small baseline activator production ($\rho_0$ in Eq. 3.2) can trigger a new activator maximum at a distance from an existing one. The resulting pattern will be fairly regular if the pattern formation mechanism has been working throughout the growth period, as shown in Fig. 4.8a. A new activator peak is formed whenever the distance to the nearest active center exceeds a critical distance. Wilcox et al. (1973) have explained similarly the periodic appearance of heterocyst cells in the alga Anabaena by means of an induction-lateral inhibition mechanism. If the pattern formation is initiated by random fluctuation and has begun only after certain extension has been obtained, the spacing will be somewhat irregular (Fig. 4.8b, Fig. 4.9); local maxima initially appear too close to one another, since the inhibition originating from the incipient centers is initially small. With increasing activator concentration, the mutual inhibition also increases and, therefore, some of the initially present activator peaks are, in the course of time, suppressed. An irregular spacing arises, but a maximum and minimum spacing is nonetheless observed. An example of a more irregular pattern is the spacing of cilia on the epidermis of Xenopus embryos and of the stomata, the apertures in the epidermis of leaves which are used for gas exchange (Fig. 4.10f,g). Bünning and Sagromsky (1948) pointed out that the stomata formation begins only after the leaves have obtained a certain size and after the cell division in the epidermis has almost ceased, which implies that the concentration of a growth hormone has dropped below a critical level. But cell division once again occurs adjacent to the stomata. The growth hormone seems to be distributed similarly to the inhibitor in the proposed theory, suggesting that they may be identical: initially the formation of the activator peak is sup-
4.6. PERIODIC STRUCTURES

Figure 4.9: Two-dimensional periodic pattern. (a-d) Stages in the formation of a bristle-like pattern in a non-growing field. The resulting pattern is irregular but a maximum and minimum distance is maintained. (e) A different calculation viewed from the top; the activator concentration is indicated by the density of dots. Biological examples: (f) the pattern of cilia on the surface of a *Xenopus* embryo (see Landström, 1977) and (g) of the stomata on a leaf (*Heleborus niger*, scanning electron micrographs kindly provided by M. Claviez).

pressed by a constitutive inhibitor (growth hormone) production (1 in Eq. 3.2) over the entire leaf. Only after the switching off of this production, activator peaks (signal for stomata formation) are formed with an irregular spacing. Each peak is surrounded by a cloud of inhibition (growth hormone) - leading to further cell divisions here. Later, the leaf grows further by expansion of the cells. If the stomata become too remote from one another, new stomata are formed at optimal spacing between the existing ones. Figures 4.10 and 4.11 show the insertion of new centers according to the theory.

The bristles and hairs on some bugs represent similarly a somewhat irregular pattern (Wigglesworth 1940). To explain the actual distances, Lawrence (1966a, 1970) concluded that the inhibitory circles have no fixed extension but that some normally distributed range of extension is required. According to our theory, the spacing will naturally show some variations. Additional activator centers arise where the inhibitor concentration falls below a certain level and not at a fixed distance from other centers. More remote centers will also contribute to the inhibitor concentration and have, therefore, an influence on the spacing. Since a fully developed activator peak is surrounded by a high inhibitor concentration, a new center can be formed only at a large distance from an existing one, whereas the initially lower inhibitor concentration of two simultaneously arising peaks allows their formation in closer proximity.

There are indications that in leaves, as well as in the insect epidermis, the spacing of different structures is controlled presumably by only one inhibitor; in leaves these structures are stomata and hairs, in insects (*Oncopeltus*) bristles and hairs (Fig. 4.11d). In *Oncopeltus*, bristles are formed only during the first four
Chapter 4. Polar, Symmetric and Periodic Patterns

Figure 4.10: Insertion of new activator maxima during intercalary growth. With increasing distances of the existing maxima, the inhibitor concentration can become low enough in some cells to allow the formation of a new maxima. (a-c) Activator (top) and inhibitor distribution (bottom) in a two-dimensional, intercalary growing field. (d) Randomly initiated maxima (similar as in Fig 4.9) and (e), newly inserted maxima (x) after intercalary growth. (f,g) Biological examples: (f) the epidermis of the leaf of *Alharia* (Bünning and Sagromsky, 1948). The older stomata (pair of dark cells) have obtained some distance from each other and new stomata (one dark cell) are initiated in-between. (g) Bristles and the surrounding plaques on the cuticle of the bug *Rhodnius* (Wigglesworth, 1940). During growth from the 4th to the 5th instar, new plaques (shaded) are formed in-between the older ones.

Larval stages; hairs are determined in the last, or fifth, larval stage. Lawrence (1970) concluded that the distribution of hairs among the bristles is obtained from a shrinkage of the inhibitory fields. According to our theory, after such a shrinkage the newly formed peaks would be of considerably lower peak height (Fig.4.11a,b) which may signify the change from the signal “make bristles” to “make hairs”. During growth of a field or shrinkage of the inhibitor range, several activator maxima can appear quite close to each other in a former activator valley, arranged like pearls on a string (Fig.4.11c). The younger chromomeres on a squid resemble such an arrangement (Fig.11e).

A beautiful example of a very regular periodic pattern is the spacing of leaves - the phyllotaxis. The leaf primordia are formed during cell proliferation in the shoot apical meristem. There are currently two major approaches for the explanation of this phenomenon. One model supposes that leaf primordia are formed at the “first available space” (Iterson, 1907, Adler, 1974). Experiments involving surgical intervention (Richards, 1948; Snow and Snow, 1935, Wardlaw and Cutter, 1956) or treatment with plant hormones (Schwabe, 1971) support the second model which assumes a field of inhibition around each existing primordium and that new primordia are formed where the total inhibitory influence is least (Schoute, 1913). That is exactly the behavior of activator-inhibitor model. Fig.4.10 shows the insertion of a new maximum between existing maxima whose spacing increased due to intercalary growth. At the area of lowest inhibitor con-
Figure 4.11: Insertion of new activator maxima during progressive restriction of diffusion. (a,b) During a shrinkage of the diffusion range, the inhibition can become so low that new maxima are formed at locations distant to existing activator maxima (similar as during intercalary growth, Fig 4.10. The maxima are lower since the inhibitor escapes much slower into the environment. (c) The new activator maxima (x) may appear quite close together in a former "activator valley". Biological examples. (d) Distribution of hairs (●) and sensory bristles (○) on the sternite of the bug *Oncopeltus* (after Lawrence, 1966b, 1970). During the first larval stages, sensory bristles (○) are formed which are remote from each other. During the fifth stage, hairs are formed which keep distance from each other and from the bristles. The reduced activator maxima (b,a) may be the signal to form hairs instead of bristles. (e) The distribution of chromatophores on the skin of a squid. The new chromatophores (x) can appear in groups between the older ones (●) (A. Packard, unpublished, drawing kindly provided by A. Packard)

centration the inhibitor distribution is necessarily shallow and therefore several cells start with activator production. The emerging maximum sharpens itself, since inhibitor is produced by all these cells, a competition starts and only the best-located group will win. The resulting new maximum has the same size and shape as the others and is surrounded by its own inhibitory field. Fig.4.12 shows a simulation of a growing shoot by approximation to a growing cylinder. Depending on parameters, alternate, opposite, or parallel arrangements of activator peaks are formed which can initiate leaf formation. The helical arrangement of leaves and the Fibonacci series can be explained on the basis of lateral inhibition as well (Richter and Schranner, 1978; Mitchison, 1977). Newly formed buds in hydra (Fig.6.1) also show alternate arrangement.
Figure 4.12: Regular spacing of activator peaks as a model for phyllotaxis. (a-f) A growing shoot is simulated by doubling the cells at the upper end of a cylinder; random fluctuation may determine the location of the first maximum (a) which can be used as a signal to initiate a leaf. After further growth (b), (c) the next maximum appears on the opposite side due to the inhibition emanating from the first maximum; the final result (d) is an alternate (distichous) arrangement. Opposite (decussate) pattern (e) is formed if the diameter of the cylinder is larger or the diffusion range of the inhibitor is smaller, and especially if an inhibitory influence from the apex prevents new centers from arising near the apex. A parallel arrangement of activator maxima (f) is formed if the growth is fast enough so that cells have some memory that their ancestors were originally activated or if the diffusion of the activator is facilitated in an axial direction. Examples of alternate and opposite leaf arrangements are given in (g) and (h). The parallel arrangement of leaflets shown in (i) may arise from an activator pattern as shown in (f).
Chapter 5

Polarity, size-regulation and alternative molecular realization

5.1 Activator-depleted substrate model

The long-range inhibitory effect need not come from a physically existing substance but can be derived from a depletion of a substance necessary of the activator production. Depletion has been postulated as the inhibitory mechanism in tubularia (Morgan, 1904; Barth, 1940) and in the spacing of insect bristles (Wigglesworth, 1940). A possible interaction which leads, according to the theory (Gierer and Meinhardt, 1972), to pattern formation is given in Eq.5.1. It has similarities with the “Brusselator” proposed by Prigogine and Lefever (1968) but is simpler:

\[
\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = ca^2 s - \mu a + D_a \frac{\partial^2 a}{\partial x^2} + \rho_0 \tag{5.1a}
\]

\[
\frac{\partial s}{\partial t} = c_0 - ca^2 s - \nu s + D_s \frac{\partial^2 s}{\partial x^2} \tag{5.1b}
\]

In this set of equations, the autocatalytic feature of activator production is maintained. The antagonistic effect results from the depletion of a highly diffusible substrate (s) which is consumed in the autocatalysis.

This mechanism has some properties different from the activator-inhibitor system which may allow an experimental distinction. In an activator-inhibitor system, an induction of a secondary activator peak is possible by an unspecific decrease of the inhibitor, e.g., by UV treatment or cell poisoning. In contrast in an activator-depleted substrate interaction, neither the removal of the activator nor the removal of substrate will induce a new activation. The unspecific induction indicates the existence of a real inhibitor.

A characteristic feature of the activator-depleted substrate interaction is that the location of an established maximum can be shifted towards higher substrate concentrations. Fig.5.1 shows a simulation in a growing field. At an early stage of growth, high activator concentration is formed at one boundary. With increasing
Figure 5.1: Activator-depleted substrate model. (a) An even simpler pattern-forming reaction does not require an inhibitor. The autocatalysis of the activator (A) is antagonized by the depletion of a substance (S), for instance a precursor, which is used up in the autocatalysis (Eq.5.1). (b) Simulation in a linear array of cells, growing at both margins. When the field is small, only an activation at one margin is possible and gradients are formed. During growth, the substrate concentration in the non-activated part can increase so that the location of the activator peak becomes unstable; a shift to the center follows. After further growth, the central peak will be split and the resulting two maxima separated. This can subsequently repeat itself. Equation 5.1 is used with the following constants: $c = 0.01$, $\mu = 0.01$, $D_a = 0.025$, $c_o = 0.01$, $\nu = 0.0$, $D_s = 0.4$ (c) This center-finding mechanism may be involved in the pattern formation of an E.coli bacterium. New material (black dots) is incorporated into the envelope of the bacterium only at a central zone of growth (Schwarz et al, 1975). After some growth, the zone splits, the bacterium divides and the two zones are again in the center of the two new bacteria.

total size, the concentration of the substrate in the non-activated area increases. With that, the concentration of the substrate in the near vicinity of the activator maximum increases and also becomes steeper; the activator production near the maximum may therefore become higher compared to that at the maximum itself. Thus, the location of the activated area at a boundary becomes unstable and shifts into the center of the area, where substrate may be supplied from both sides of the activator peak. Therefore, such a mechanism is able to detect the center of a field. With still further growth, the activator maximum would split in two, and both maxima separating from each other. Such a process may be at work in the determination of the central growth zone in a bacterial cell. An E.coli bacterium is surrounded by a firm envelope, the murein sacculus, which determines the shape of the cell (Schwarz et al., 1975). Autoradiographic studies have revealed that new material is incorporated only in a small band in the center of the bacterium (Fig.5.1). If the size of the bacterium surpasses a certain length, the growth zone first splits in two. Only thereafter, division is initiated and the two growth zones are again located at the new centers of the two cells. The signal to form pole caps may be a certain substrate concentration. The pattern formation within the bacterium indicates that an autocatalytic step is involved in the growth of a bacterial envelope and that the supply of precursor molecules is rate-limiting in this process.

Thus, in the activator-depleted substrate system, a regular distribution of activator maxima may be obtained by splitting and shifts of previously existing activator centers as the field size increases. This is in contrast to the activator-
inhibitor system where whole new activator centers arise at a distance from previous centers.

5.2 Autocatalysis may result from an inhibition of an inhibition

It is very possible that more than two substances are involved in the pattern-forming reaction. In these cases autocatalysis and lateral inhibition may be hidden in more complex reaction schemes. The following reaction consists of three components and does not contain any autocatalytic term:

\[
\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{b^2} - a + D_a \frac{\partial^2 a}{\partial x^2} + \rho_0 \\
\frac{\partial b}{\partial t} = \frac{c}{a} - b \\
\frac{\partial c}{\partial t} = a - c + D_c \frac{\partial^2 c}{\partial x^2}
\]

(all constants have been set arbitrarily to unity and Michaelis-Menten constants in the nominator are omitted for simplicity). The effective autocatalysis results from the mutual inhibition of the substances \(a\) and \(b\). Assume \(a\) and \(b\) at an equilibrium. A small increase of \(a\) would lead to a decrease of \(b\) and a lowered \(b\) concentration would lead in turn to a further increase of the \(a\) production. By itself such a system of two substances inhibiting each other would be bistable and either a high \(a\) or a high \(b\) concentration would be attained (see p.?). These two components together can play the part of the activator in a pattern forming system. In addition, it has to be ensured that if in one part of a field, for instance, \(a\) is dominating, in the remaining part \(b\) must be dominating. This can again be achieved by a substance of a high diffusion range. For instance, as shown in Eq.5.2c, \(a\) may be converted into the diffusible substance \(c\) which undermines the repression of \(b\) by \(a\), since it is in competition with the \(a\) molecules. The example demonstrates how careful one has to be with the attribute “activation” or “inhibition”. Formally, the substance \(c\) has an activating effect on the \(b\) production. In the complete reaction system, however, the long-ranging \(c\) is antagonistic to the autocatalysis and leads to stabilization. It has, therefore, the function of the inhibitor. Formally, the concentration difference between the two (short-ranging) substances inhibiting each other has the function of the activator, causing the local destabilization (Gierer, 1981a).

5.3 The sources of the activator and inhibitor and their polarity-determining influence on the pattern

So far, we have assumed that the tissue is initially homogeneous, every cell is able to synthesize the activator with the same efficiency. In fact, it has been one
CHAPTER 5. POLARITY AND SIZE-REGULATION

Figure 5.2: Polarity determining influence of the source distribution on the emerging activator pattern. Any asymmetry in prerequisites necessary for the pattern forming reaction - the sources - can orient the emerging activator pattern in a predictable way. In a reaction according Eq.3.2, the final activator but not the inhibitor concentration (----) is independent of the source density (−Δ−Δ−Δ−Δ−Δ). (a) Initiation of the pattern by a shallow source gradient. Removal of the activator maximum leads to its regeneration with the same polarity (compare with Fig 4.4) and Fig. 4.7). (b) Higher absolute values or some fluctuations in the source density are without influence on the final activator pattern.

of our aims to show the possibility of pattern formation out of an otherwise unstructured tissue. However, a biological fact is that most tissues have an intrinsic asymmetry, a polarity. Axial differentials in respiration, in oxidation - reduction reactions, in permeability, or in electric potentials have been detected in protozoa, eggs, embryos, hydroids, and some algae (see Child, 1929, 1941). Further, tissue fragments regenerate removed parts at a predictable position. For instance, in tubularia, an open apical end regenerates a hydrant and this is independent of the position of the cut. However, a piece of a column with two open ends does not regenerate a new hydrant on both ends, but only at the apical end. Morgan (1904) concluded from this fact that a competition exists between both sites and that a systematic advantage exists for more apical parts. That systematic advantage he has called “polarity”. In terms of the model, certain prerequisites may be necessary for the synthesis of the activator and inhibitor, for instance, particular messengers or enzymes, ribosomes, energy-rich substances, such as ATP, or the presence of a certain cell type to which the synthesis is possibly restricted. We have called these necessary components “sources”. In a formal sense a source is analogous to a water faucet. Then the effect of activator and inhibitor concentration is to open or close the faucet permitting more or less activator to be released. Thus, the activator and inhibitor concentrations decide to what extent the sources are active. The distribution of differentiated cells or cell constituents is a relatively stable tissue property, and a change requires much more time than the change of an activator distribution. The source distribution is the (relatively stable) polarity-determining tissue property, since it determines the orientation of the activator slope. To say it again, it is not assumed as in other gradient models that a local sources create the gradient but that minor asymmetries in the source density distribution orient the pattern. The pattern itself is generated by autocatalysis and lateral inhibition. The assumption of a graded source density is required on the basis of biological observations and not
5.4 SIZE REGULATION

because it is logically necessary for pattern formation.

The source densities enter into the equations simply as factors in the auto- and cross-catalytic terms \( \rho(x), \rho'(x) \) (Eq.3.2 and 3.3). The simulation in Fig.5.2 shows that even a very shallow asymmetry orients a pattern and that the resulting pattern is independent of details in the source distribution. Depending on the type of interaction, the final activator concentration may (Eq.3.3) or may not (Eq.3.2) depend on the absolute source density. Its influence will become important for the simulation of transplantation experiments with hydra (Fig.6.2 and 6.3).

A graded source distribution has another very important consequence: It stabilizes the formation of only one activator maximum in fields of different sizes. An activator-inhibitor system on its own would form one, two or several maxima, depending sensitively on the size of the field (Fig.4.1). In contrast, in a system with a graded source density, that activator maximum which arises at the area of highest source density dominates. It suppresses other possible maxima very efficiently (since it produces, for instance, more inhibitor). This allows, for instance, that fragments of hydras can vary at least a factor five in size and, nevertheless, only one head is formed. In tissues with a graded source density, the regeneration of an activator maximum will occur always according to the original polarity. This is in contrast with regeneration in an isotropic tissue where an activator maximum can appear at the opposite end (Fig.4.4, 4.7).

It may appear that a circular argument has been creeping in. We assume a graded source distribution to orient the activator gradient. But what is the origin of the source gradient? We have seen that in a growing area a monotonically graded activator distribution will appear even if the sources are homogenously distributed. If a high activator or inhibitor concentration causes a long term increase in the source density, the graded activator distribution leads to a more stable source distribution which provides the asymmetry to orient a regenerating pattern. The closed loop of a rapidly formed prepattern which generates a long-lasting asymmetry which can orient a prepattern, e.g. during regeneration, enables an infinite perpetuation. The asymmetry is maintained by a self-renewing process and is not diluted out if, for instance, a hydra is forced again and again to regenerate. In most biological cases, pattern formation does not involve a symmetry breaking (although the proposed mechanism can perform this) since the tissue or its environment is asymmetric. The asymmetric organism forms an asymmetric egg and the orientation of the developing organism is therefore predictable.

5.4 Size Regulation

The size of a particular substructure may be regulated in relation to the total size of the organism. For instance, during the formation of spores in the slime mold \textit{Dictyostelium}, the front part of a migrating slug forms presumptive stalk cells, the remaining part forms prespore cells. The proportion of both cell types is well regulated over a large range of sizes of slugs (Fig.5.3; Raper, 1940; Bonner and
CHAPTER 5. POLARITY AND SIZE-REGULATION

Figure 5.3: Size-regulation in the slug of the slime mold *Dictyostelium discoideum*. The slug consists essentially of two cell types, the prestalk cells at the tip and the prespore cells at the rear. Vital stain is taken up in the vacuole of prestalk cells, they appear dark. (a) In slugs of different sizes, the ratio of prestalk/prespore cells is maintained (see MacWilliams and Bonner, 1979). (b-d) Regeneration of a tip. After removal of the prestalk cells, new prestalk cells appear at random positions. A new tip area is formed by a chemotactic sorting out of the prestalk cells (b) 55, (c) 110 and (d) 160 min after tip removal (drawn after photographs kindly supplied by H. MacWilliams and A. Durston; see Durston and Vork, 1979).

Figure 5.4: (a-c) Size regulation of the activated region occurs if the maximum activator production is limited (Eq.3.2, $\kappa \neq 0$). Due to the limitation, an increase of the total activator production can occur only by enlargement of the activator-producing area. The total activator production depends on the space into which the inhibitor can diffuse and decay. The activated region will be, therefore, roughly proportional to the total area as long as the inhibitor spreads out into the whole area by rapid diffusion or convection. (a) a linear array of cells, growing at the non-activated site. Due to size-regulation, the activated area increases in correct proportion. (b) After removal of the non-activated part from a distribution as shown in (a), the activated area shrinks until the corresponding size is obtained due to a build-up of inhibitor within the more confined space. (c) Removal of the activated part leads to a regeneration of the activated region corresponding to the smaller size.

Slifkin, 1949; MacWilliams and Bonner, 1979). Similarly, the size of the head of a hydra is regulated in relation of the total size of the animal (Bode and Bode, 1981).

The following mechanism would provide a mean to measure the ratio of a particular cell type to the total number of cells. Let us assume two patches of differently determined cells, A and B. Only the A-cells produce a substance $h$ which can diffuse freely between the A and B cells. The concentration of the substance $h$ will be a measure for the ratio of A-cells to the total number of cells ($A + B$) since it is proportional to the number of A-cells, the producers, and inversely proportional to the total number of cells ($A + B$) in which decay (and diffusion) takes place.

This method of size sensing can be combined with pattern formation if the activated cells (A-cells) produce the diffusible substance, the inhibitor $h$, at a fixed (more or less inhibitor-independent) amount. This can be achieved by a
5.4. SIZE REGULATION

saturation of the activator production such as introduced in Eq.3.2 by the term \(1/(1 + \kappa a^2)\). With an increase of the total area, more space would be available into which the inhibitor can diffuse and decay. Due to the lowered inhibitor concentration, more and more cells switch from low to high but saturating activator production, balancing the ratio of activated to non-activated cells (Fig.5.4). The saturation of the activator production has the consequence that the concentration maximum cannot increase in height but has to extend into a larger space. The activated area is therefore roughly proportional to the total area as long as the inhibitor range covers the total field. An efficient inhibitor redistribution would be decisive for the range of size regulation. The size regulation also works when the pattern is already established, e.g. removal of the non-activated part leads to a shrinkage of the activated area (Fig.5.4b). This size regulation would work as well in an activator-depleted substrate-scheme if the autocatalysis saturates. Then, all cells would produce a substance \(s\) which is consumed for the activation of cells and for the maintenance of this activation. Thus, the number of activated (\(s\)-consuming) cells will be in correct proportion to the total number of (\(s\)-producing) cells.

In contrast to the areas of high and of low activator concentration, the zone of transition between both areas does not adapt to the actual size (Fig.5.4a) since it is determined by the diffusion range of the activator. The zone of transition is important for size regulation since a flip from high to low concentration or vice versa during expansion or shrinkage of the activated area occurs in this zone. A sharper zone of transition would increase the time required for adaptation to a new size. For very small areas, this transitional zone is too large to be neglected, and leads to an enlarged activated area. At the other extreme, in field sizes larger than the range of the inhibitor, the inhibitor cannot sense the total field and the activated areas formed are relative too small. Both deviations from a perfect size regulation can be seen in Dictyostelium and in Hydra (MacWilliams and Bonner, 1979; Bode and Bode, 1981).

The activated area can be maintained as a coherent area by a substantial activator diffusion. However, higher activator diffusion enlarges the zone of transition between high and low concentration and thereby deteriorates size regulation, as described above. A coherent activated area can be stabilized despite a small activator diffusion by a graded source distribution, since then the activation is strongly favored in the area of high source density. In discussing the application of this model to Dictyostelium, MacWilliams and Bonner (1979) proposed that the experimentally observed sorting out of cells serves to set up such source gradient.
5.5 The slug of the slime mold: size regulation and pattern formation may be separated but coupled processes

In the model described so far, one and the same mechanism is able to generate a pattern and to control the size of the activated and non-activated portion. It may be satisfactory from the theoretical point of view to use only two substances for both purposes. However, very basic observations suggest that separate mechanisms are involved and good reasons can be given why this is of advantage.

The model would predict that in a size-regulated field a secondary maximum can hardly be induced since the inhibitor is distributed evenly in the whole field (otherwise a measurement of the total size would not be possible). Experimental observation contradicts that expectation. A large slime mold slug can decay into several smaller slugs and in hydra, near-head tissue can induce a second head (Fig. 6.2), indicating in both cases the ability to form secondary maxima.

Let us have a closer look to the slug of *Dictyostelium*. A distinction between future prestalk and prespore cells may occur very early after aggregation and possibly already during the aggregation phase itself (Maeda and Maeda, 1974). These cell types sort out in a chemotactic manner (Matsukuma and Durston, 1979; Durston and Vork, 1979; Tasaka and Takeuchi, 1981). This indicates that two different mechanisms are at work, one to form the correct number of prestalk and prespore cells and the other to position these cells correctly. In the model, if the activator is non-diffusible, the decision whether a particular cell will be activated is independent of the activation of the neighbour cells. The activated cells would be more or less randomly distributed among the non-activated cells ("salt and pepper distribution"), and the number of the activated cells will be in the correct proportion to the total number of cells. Which cells will become activated depends again on small differences in relative initial advantages described as source density. The fact that glucose-fed cells preferentially form prespore cells (Leach, Ashworth and Garrod, 1973) when aggregating together with non-glucose-fed cells can be explained in this way.

A second mechanism would be required to separate the intermingled prestalk and prespore cells. In *Dictyostelium*, this is achieved by a chemotactic movement of the prestalk cells towards the tip of the slug (Bonner, 1959; Durston and Vork, 1979). The signalling system for that chemotaxis may be similar as during the aggregation of ameba and consist in a pulsative secretion of cAMP. However, any of the gradient forming mechanisms described above would be equally appropriate to generate an internal gradient. The high point of this gradient would form the tip of the slug. Both, prestalk and prespore cells, move uphill of this gradient and therefore the slug moves as a whole. To enable the sorting out of prestalk cells at the tip, the prestalk cells have to migrate faster than the prespore cells. It would be desirable that the center of chemotactic attraction appears in a region of relative high prestalk cell density. This occurs if the prestalk cells have a higher source density in respect to the chemotactic gradient system (see Fig. 5.2). With progressing chemotaxis and accumulation of prestalk cells at the tip, the
5.5. SIZE REGULATION AND PATTERN FORMATION

Figure 5.5: Simulation of the size-regulation for *Dictyostelium* according to the two step hypothesis. (a) If in a size-regulating activator-inhibitor system the activator diffusion is very low and the source density shows only random fluctuations, the activated cells are not located in a contiguous patch of cells but are randomly distributed. However, the ratio of activated/non-activated cells is independent of the total number of cells. A separate mechanism (e.g. a chemotactic sorting-out of cells) would be required to separate the two populations. (b,c) This size-regulation works also in regenerating slugs. If prestalk cells are removed (b), the inhibitor accumulates temporarily since it cannot longer escape into the non-activated part. This leads to a conversion of some prestalk cells into prespore cells (deactivation). After removal of the activated prestalk cells, the inhibitor drops (not shown) and new cells arise (c), again initially randomly distributed (see Fig.5.3).

The tip will also be the region of highest source density. Thus, the prestalk-prespore system, on one hand, and the chemotactic gradient system, on the other, mutually reinforce each other. The gradient determines the tip which attracts the prestalk cells. The prestalk cells, in turn, are better in producing the chemotactic signal and their collection at the tip stabilizes the gradient.

The proportion-regulation in a regenerating slug (truncated after the separation of the two cell populations) seems to be an argument against a sorting-out mechanism. However, according to the model, proportion regulation works also in regenerating slugs. For instance, after the removal of prestalk cells (activated cells) at the tip, inhibitor is no longer produced in the remaining slug. The inhibitor drops and new cells become autocatalytic. Again, the cells with the relative highest source density become activated; and they can be almost randomly distributed within the remaining field (Fig.5.5). After completion of this first step, (the selection of new prestalk cells), the second process, the determination of the location of the new tip area, follows. A new aggregation center region is formed at an area of the highest density of the newly formed prestalk cells, attracting the other prestalk cells (Fig.5.3).

What is the advantage of having different mechanisms for pattern formation and size regulation? If the two mechanisms were not separate, pattern formation and, based on that, the preparatory phases of development into stalk and spore cells could start only after the slug has been formed. Since the slug has a substantial size (1.5 mm), the life-time of the inhibitor must be of the order of several hours to allow a complete equilibration of the inhibitor and a correct measurement of the total size. Therefore, pattern formation itself would require several hours and only then the signal would be available for cells to develop into prestalk or prespore cells. Such a long time interval is especially disadvantageous for cells which have been running out of food as it is the case for the slug. The separation into two processes avoids these problems. Whenever cells aggregate,
communication between neighboring cells causes about every third cell to become activated and to receive the signal “be prepared to become a stalk cell”. That process can take place independently in many small aggregates and long before the final slug is formed. It is a fast process since it requires communication only between neighboring cells. The gradient for the chemotactic sorting out can be formed simultaneously.

Some factors have been partially purified which are presumably involved in the pattern formation as described above. The differentiation-inducing factor DIF (Town et al., 1976; Gross et al., 1981) may be the substance controlling the number of prestalk cells. The slug turning factor STF (Fisher et al., 1981) may be the inhibitor in the gradient system which orients the chemotactic movement of the cells. Together with other factors influencing slug morphogenesis such as cAMP or ammonia (Sussman and Schindler, 1978), both substances may provide inroads for the biochemical characterization of a relatively simple pattern forming process.

The argument for a separation of both processes in hydra would be similar. It is essential for a regenerating hydra to have a rapid decision over which group of cell should form the new head. The control of the final size is not such a critical decision and can consume more time.

5.6 Oscillating patterns and their use in chemotactic-sensitive cells

An activator peak, once formed, is very stable, and a shift in space by small external influences is nearly impossible, since an activator peak is, for instance, shielded by a “cloud” of inhibition. This stability is desirable for many situations; for others it is not. As already mentioned, small external influences can direct the location of a developing activator maximum. This mechanism offers a possibility for a chemotactic-sensitive cell to detect weak concentration differences. But the stability of an activator peak once formed would prevent a continuous adaptation to the changing external conditions. A possible solution would be an oscillating establishment and decay of an activator peak, whereby at each oscillation, the activator peak can be newly localized at the best position available. Periodic formation of the activator peak is obtained if the lifetime of the inhibitor is longer than that of the activator (Meinhardt and Gierer, 1974) or, in the activator-depleted substrate model, if the substrate concentration equilibrates too slowly. The periodic appearance of an activator maximum and the adaptation to a changed external gradient is shown in Fig. 5.6. The inhibitor, due to its longer lifetime, accumulates. From a certain level on the activator production is switched off and the remnant activator decays. After the decay of the inhibitor, a new activator maximum is triggered, starting either from an internal basic production or by an external supply. The location at which the maximum appears depends on small external influences and may be changed from one oscillation maximum to the next.
5.6. OSCILLATIONS AND CHEMOTAXIS

Figure 5.6: A model for chemotactic sensitivity. The high amplification of small local difference which is inherent in the activator-lateral inhibition mechanism, can be used to detect the direction of an external gradient. A periodic adaptation to changing environmental conditions is possible if the activator concentration oscillates, as is demonstrated here with the activator-inhibitor model. Oscillation occurs if the inhibitor adapts too slowly to a changing activator concentration. The calculation is made for a circular object; to allow a space-time plot (a), the circle is cut up, the left and right ends of the represented distributions are, therefore, in reality adjacent neighbors. Some stages in the polar (intracellular) activation are shown in (b-g). The cell membrane is represented by a circular arrangement of elements, and the activator (———) and inhibitor distribution (- - - -) is indicated. A shallow external gradient (2 % difference in $\rho_0$ across the cell, arrow points to the highest concentration on the cell surface) triggers a sharp local maximum which could then be used as a signal to draw out pseudopods at this side. After the (slow) decay of the inhibitor the next activation is possible. If the direction of the external gradient has been changed (arrow), the location of the activator peak will change accordingly. Such a mechanism may be the basis for the chemotactic sensitivity of aggregating amoeba of the slime mold Dictyostelium discoideum.

An example where an oscillating maximum could be used for the detection of an external gradient may be the aggregating amoeba of the slime mold Dictyostelium discoideum (see Gerisch, 1968; Loomis, 1975) which find each other by chemotaxis after a shortage of food. In the model, the cells would have a very sensitive phase for the orientation of the activator peak shortly before the next activation occurs. The short lifetime of the activator within the cell may reflect a secretion of the activator into the medium, thus providing a signal for other cells. The longer lifetime of the inhibitor (or the time necessary to restore the substrate concentration) causes a lag phase before the next oscillation can be stimulated. Increasing activator concentration in the medium can shorten the time until the next oscillation occurs which enables the synchronization of the individual cells. Therefore, in addition to the ability to respond in a directional way, this simple mechanism has all the properties demanded by Cohen and Robertson (1971) for the relay mechanism in Dictyostelium. The autocatalytic substance in the oscillation of Dictyostelium is cyclic AMP (Gerisch and Hess, 1974; Malchow et al., 1978). The application of a small amount of cAMP to a suspension of cells can lead to a 100 fold increase of cAMP in comparison to the added amount. The pathway of the autocatalysis and of the antagonistic reaction which causes the oscillation is not yet clear.

A similar process may be going on in the growth cone of an extending nerve fiber. The growth cone has to find a particular target cell, presumably by following a signalling gradient. Harrison (1910) has shown that nerve extension is not a
continuous process but proceeds stepwise. The reason for this may be that nerve
growth consists of two separate phases. First the cell senses the local gradient,
leading to internal amplification of the signal. Following this period of amplifica-
tion, the cell grows in the direction of the internal maximum, somewhat “blind”
to the external gradient. More details about the formation of netlike structures
will be given below (chapter 15).

5.7 Strategies for the isolation of activators and inhibitors
and expected pitfalls

For the maintenance of an inhomogeneous activator and inhibitor distribution, a
continuous production and decay of both substances are necessary; this requires
energy. In a developing egg the food supply is restricted. It is, therefore, to
be expected that the cells produce the substances only in small quantities and
that the cells are sufficiently sensitive. To give an example, the slime mold
\textit{Dictyostelium discoideum} is sensitive to a cAMP increase of as low as \(3 \cdot 10^{-11}\)
M (Malchow et al., 1978). In cases in which higher concentrations of a substance
are required for a change of development, it is likely that non-specific effects are
observed.

The non-trivial antagonistic interaction between the autocatalytic and in-
hibitory substances is presumably the reason why no complete pattern-forming
reaction is yet known. The general problem can be illustrated by an analogy.
Let us assume that we would like to detect the mechanism whereby a few people
become rich and others remain poor. Perhaps, for this investigation, we could
arrange for a complete separation of all the rich people from the rest of the popu-
lation. Instead of finding the mechanism, the so separated rich people will become
poor and new rich ones will emerge. The property we sought to investigate has
disappeared, since its maintenance requires a permanent interaction with the
environment. Correspondingly, isolated small activated areas would lose their
activation quite soon, since the inhibitor can no longer spread out and, in this
way, the activation itself would be suppressed. In contrast, in the tissue thought
to contain no activator, an intensive activator production starts almost imme-
diately. The experimental task to separate activated and non-activated tissue
fragments as initial step in the isolation of the substances would be incorrectly
regarded as failure.

Biological tests are necessary to isolate both substances, and attention should
be called to some precautions. The application of one of the substances can
mimic the effect of the other. If, for instance, activator is added in a quantity
which is large compared to that which occurs naturally, the activator is elevated
everywhere. Due to the cross-catalysis, the inhibitor concentration will also in-
crease tremendously. This suppresses the endogeneous activator production. In
other words, externally supplied activator will not enhance but destroy the ex-
isting pattern. After the removal of the activator excess, the pattern is quickly
restored, perhaps with a secondary activator peak at a new location. The same
result would have been observed if inhibitor were supplied in large quantities. The local application of the activator or inhibitor at the active center, as well as the removal of inhibitor there (see Fig. 8.4j), would suppress the formation of a secondary activation. A local application of activator at a distance from the activated center can induce a second center, but one has to take care that the effect does not arise from an unspecific loss of the inhibitor resulting from the treatment.

Perhaps the best strategy for the isolation of substances is to look first for inhibitory substances. For instance, if a substance suppresses regeneration at low concentration and if it is non-toxic for the tissue, the chance is high that the substance is involved in the normal morphogenetic process. Putative activating substances can then be tested to determine if they are able to overcome a low level of inhibition. Overall application of activating substances can be only successful if a quite strong inhomogeneity exists in the tissue; a local application would be better. If the existing activator center has first been removed, the system would be especially sensitive to local addition of activator or inhibitor. If a periodic structure regenerates - as in the case of a hydra head with its tentacles - small amounts of activator may alter the number of the maxima.

No doubt, the isolation of both substances is a difficult task but we hope that the theoretical insights help in the design of assay systems, especially in the interpretation of the results.
CHAPTER 5. POLARITY AND SIZE-REGULATION
Chapter 6

Almost a summary: Hydra as a model organism

In higher organisms, the pattern forming process leading to the primary subdivision of an organism occurs only once and in a short time interval. In many cases, the embryo is then very difficult to access for an experimental manipulation. In contrast, small pieces of the freshwater polyp hydra can regenerate the basic body pattern every time. It is therefore a convenient model organism to study the generation of a primary pattern and the diverse features of its pattern regulation allow a comparison of the proposed model and the real biological system (Gierer, 1977a).

A hydra is about 1-2 mm long (Fig.6.1), contains about 100,000 cells but has only about 7 different classes of cell types. It is essentially a cylinder consisting of an ectodermal and endodermal cell layer. Characteristic structures are the hypostome with the opening of the gastric column for food uptake, the 4-6 tentacles, one or several buds and the basal disc to adhere to some support. The hydra has been used for the study of developmental processes for a long time. The ability to regenerate missing parts has been mentioned as early as 1744 by Abraham Trembley (1744).

Besides of the formation of new heads, many other features of hydra morphogenesis have been experimentally investigated, for instance the control of foot regeneration (MacWilliams et al., 1970), the determination of nerve cells from interstitial cells (Berking, 1979b), the regulation of multipotent stem cells (Bode and David, 1978), the change in the cell shape of evaginating buds (Graf and Gierer, 1980), the morphogenesis of nerve and stem cell-free hydras (Campell, 1976). Mutants are available in which normal development is altered (Sugiyama, 1981), for instance, mutants, which cannot regenerate or which form multiple heads along the body column. The experimental investigation of the parameters which are changed in these mutants will provide more information about how normal development is controlled (Sugiyama, 1981). With all this information (for a recent survey see Tardent and Tardent, 1980), the hydra has a good chance to provide us in the near future with a rather complete picture about how the development of a relatively simple organism is controlled.
6.1 The appearance of new heads after grafting operations

A very instructive set of axial grafts on hydra have been carried out by Wolpert et al. (1971). To have some reference points for the discussion of the graft experiments, they coined names for the parts of the hydra: the head (H), the gastric column (1, 2, 3, 4), the bud region (B), the peduncle (P) and the basal disc (D). In Fig. 6.2, the main results are sketched together with computer simulation on the basis of Eq. 3.2, showing that the model is able to account for the experimental results with one set of parameters such as decay and diffusion rates. For instance, a combination of two hydra fragments H12/1234 leads very rarely to the formation of a new head at the site of connection while after removal of an existing head, e.g., in a combination 12/1234 a new head is frequently formed (Fig. 6.2e, d). Generally, tissue located originally close to the head has a strong tendency to form a head when implanted sufficiently remote from a head (Fig. 6.2f).

In terms of the model, a high activator concentration could be the signal to form the head. The local maximum is necessarily surrounded by a zone of inhibition. After head removal, the inhibitor drops and a new maximum will be formed in the remaining tissue, leading to the regeneration of the head. By the trans-
6.1. THE APPEARANCE OF NEW HEADS AFTER GRAFTING OPERATIONS

Figure 6.2: Simulation of transplantation experiments with Hydra (Gierer and Meinhardt, 1972, 1974). The simulation is intended to demonstrate the polarizing effect of a shallow source distribution and the suppression of an activator peak if induced too close to another one. High activator concentration is assumed to be the signal for head formation. The nerve cells are assumed to be the sources of activator and inhibitor (Schaller and Gierer, 1973; in Eq.3.2 $\rho = \rho'$); the assumed distribution is indicated (–•–•–). (a) Formation of the graded activator concentration which is used as the initial concentration before experimental interference in (b-f) and in Fig 6.3. (b) Regeneration of a 1 - 2 piece. The source distribution assures regeneration in the original polarity, even if the activator distribution is completely uniform. (c) A small piece from near the head, 1, grafted onto a body column regenerates only one head due to the lateral inhibition. (d) A larger piece, 1 - 2, grafted onto the body column develops two heads. (e) The second head can be suppressed if the original head is left on the first piece. (f) If the first piece is longer and, therefore, the distance between the head and the site of the graft (containing a source density discontinuity) higher, the inhibition of the head may be too low and a new head can be formed. This simulation agrees with the experiments of Wolpert et al. (1971); Hicklin et al. (1973).

plantation, a stimulus for triggering of a new activator is formed. The stimulus can consist of the remaining activator and/or of the steps in the source density. The latter is presumably more important since the source density is more stable and lasts for a longer time. The probability of overcoming the local inhibition increases with increasing distance from the existing head (area of inhibitor production), but also when the transplanted tissue is derived from a location closer to the head, since then the resulting step in the source density is higher.

The polarity reversal experiments of Wilby and Webster (1970a,b, Fig.6.3) provide a direct indication for the stability of the source density and for the time required for the inhibitor to diffuse through the body column. Removal of a head and grafting it at the end of the body column (1234H) leads to a head regeneration at the 1-piece. This proceeds like a normal regeneration since the inhibitor needs too much time to diffuse through the body column and the
CHAPTER 6. ALMOST A SUMMARY: HYDRA AS A MODEL ORGANISM

Figure 6.3: Polarity reversal experiments in Hydra (Wilby and Webster, 1970a,b) and their simulations. The experiments indicate the time requirement for the diffusion of the inhibitor through the animal and the stability of the source distribution. (a) If the head is removed and grafted at the opposite end of the body column, the inhibitor needs too much time to diffuse through the animal; regeneration of a head will take place. (b) If, in a similar experiment, the original head is removed no earlier than 4 hours after implantation of the second head, there is enough time available for the inhibitor to diffuse through the animal and, after removal of the original head, a regeneration is suppressed. (c) If the head of such a hydra with apparently reversed polarity is removed, the regeneration appears according to the original polarity; the source distribution, not the remnant activator concentration, is decisive for the location of the new activation.

The formation of a new prepattern cannot be suppressed. However, if an additional head is first grafted (H1234H) and later, after at least 4 hours, the original head is removed (1234H), sufficient time is available for the inhibitor to diffuse through the body column and the regeneration at the 1-piece can be suppressed (Fig. 6.3b). Such a “reversed” hydra is stable. However, a fragment derived from such an artificially reversed hydra regenerates the head according to the original polarity (Fig. 6.3c). This is a strong indication of a long-lasting tissue property with an orienting effect on the prepattern. It shows also that the activator pattern and the polarity-determining tissue property can be experimentally brought into conflict. As a rule, an established activator maximum will dominate over an oppositely oriented source distribution, while in the regeneration of an activator maximum, the source distribution will be decisive. If the reversed arrangement lasts for more than four days, the intrinsic polarity changes also and regeneration will occur at the end of the body column next to the transplanted head. In the long term, the prepattern imposes its orientation onto the tissue polarity.

The model is based upon the assumption that the polarity of the tissue results from a graded tissue composition and not from the alignment of polar cells. A
Figure 6.4: Experimental evidence that polarity of hydra is based on cell composition and not on the alignment of individual polar cells (Gierer et al., 1972). (a) Tissues derived from near the head (H) and from a more central region of the body column (C) has been dissociated. A possible alignment of the cells is certainly lost in this procedure. By centrifugation in a tube, sausage-like aggregates are produced, the H-cells are located either marginally (HCH) (b) or centrally (CHC) (c). After two days, new tentacles are formed mainly from the cells derived from near the head (H) (d). This preparation avoids any vital staining which could disturb the result. (e-h) Simulation in a cylindrical array of cells. (e,g) Assumed source density (difference between inner and outer cylinder); (f,h) final activator distribution. Maxima are formed at the margins or in the center.

dissociation–reaggregation experiment with hydra tissue (Gierer et al., 1972) has provided direct evidence for this. In this experiment (Fig.6.4) tissue derived from a near-head-region (H) and from the body column (C) has been dissociated. In this procedure, the orientation of the individual cells is certainly lost while the tissue composition remains unchanged. In composite reaggregates formed from clusters of H and C cells, most of tentacles are formed from the H-cluster, indicating that the original position of the cells are decisive, as expected from the graded source density hypothesis. A computer simulation is shown in Fig.6.4.

Strips cut from a hydra cylinder regenerate differently depending on whether the strips have an axial or circumferential orientation (Bode and Bode, 1980). In the latter case, two heads or feet are formed frequently (Fig.6.5). The asymmetry-providing source density is graded in the axial but constant in the circumferential extension. In a circumferential strip the absolute differences in source densities are much smaller. Therefore cells of higher source density are further apart. The polarising asymmetry of the tissue is less pronounced. During the competition between regions for making the head-signal, two maxima can arise.
CHAPTER 6. ALMOST A SUMMARY: HYDRA AS A MODEL ORGANISM

Figure 6.5: Influence of the orientation of the source gradient on the number of heads formed. (a) Longitudinal strips of the body column regenerate only one head or foot. (b) In contrast, circumferential strips regenerate, as a rule, two heads or two feet (Bode and Bode, 1980). (c,d) Simulation: A source gradient (bottom) oriented along the long side of a rectangular piece of tissue (c) leads to the formation of only one activator maximum (top) since the distance between the cells with high source density is small. (d) A strip of the same size and the same slope in the source density gradient but with a long extension perpendicular to the source density gradient forms two maxima. The total difference in the source density is smaller and cells with the same source density are much further apart. The “headstart” in the competition for head formation is thus less pronounced and two maxima can result.

6.2 Substances influencing hydra morphogenesis

Some factors are known which influence development of a hydra. Berking (1977, 1979a) has partially purified a substance which can inhibit bud formation and as well as head and foot regeneration. The tissue is very sensitive to this inhibitor, concentrations of $< 1 \cdot 10^{-9}$M are sufficient to show detectable effects. The chemical composition of the inhibitor is not yet known, it is small (500-1000 DA) and it is not a peptide. Schaller (1973, 1981) found a “head activator” which increases the number of tentacles and enhances the transition from interstitial cells (stem cells) into nerve cells. It is a small peptide consisting of ten amino acids. The sequence is known (Schaller, 1982). In terms of the model, this substance could be responsible for the feedback of the prepattern on the source density. It leads to an increase of the density of nerve cells which are, in turn, the main source of this head activator. It is presumably not the activator in our model. No indication for an autocatalytic action has been found. From the point of view of the model, it would be reasonable to assume that the head activator with its determinative influence on nerve cell formation plays an essential role in the size-regulation of the head, but not in the determination of the position where the head is formed. The reasons why these two processes are separated have been given on (p.43). A very helpful circumstance has facilitated the isolation of both these substances: they are stored in large amounts in a bound form. In hydra, it seems to be more the release of stored morphogenetic substances than the rate of synthesis which is decisive for the control of development. This appears reasonable since after head removal, the animal has to starve until a new head is formed. Head regeneration must be as fast as possible and can proceed only on the expense of available material.
Chapter 7

Spatial sequences of structures under the control of a morphogen gradient

7.1 Intercalating versus non-intercalating sequences

The concentration pattern formed by autocatalysis and lateral inhibition is assumed to be the signal or prepattern, to initiate a particular structure, for instance, the head of a hydra. Frequently, several structures are formed in a precise spatial relationship. They are determined under a common developmental control. Even in hydra it is not only the hypostome, the cone-shaped opening of the gastric column, which is formed during a regeneration but this structure is also surrounded by a ring of tentacles. More evident examples for sequences of structures are the digits of a vertebrate limb, the segments of an insect or an insect leg or the structures within such segments.

Some of these sequences have the ability to regenerate missing elements by intercalary regeneration while others are unable to do so. Examples for both can be found in the development of insects. In cockroaches, an internal part removed from a particular leg segment will regenerate (Bohn, 1965; French, 1978). However, confrontation of different leg segments does not necessarily lead to the regeneration of the missing segments (Bohn, 1970a,b). Similarly, gaps in the basic body pattern of insects are not repaired. For instance, gaps induced by a temporal ligation of an Euscelis egg remain permanently (Armbruster and Sander, quoted after Sander, 1975b) and asymmetric bicaudal embryos of Drosophila (Fig. 8.3) develop such gaps without any experimental interference (Nüsslein-Volhard, 1977).

In looking for differences between systems which show and which do not show intercalary regeneration, it is remarkable that most non-intercalating sequences are determined in a period without much change in the geometry. The segments of insects are determined in the non-growing egg and little cell proliferation takes place during the critical period of blastoderm formation. Similarly, in regen-
erating insect legs, the newly formed sequence of segments is laid down in a very minute scale and proceeds without cell divisions. Only later, after the leg segments are already distinguishable, are these structures enlarged by growth (Bulliere, 1972; see Fig. 9.6). In the terminology of Morgan (1901), both these processes are presumably morphallactic processes. Further, non-intercalating sequences have in many cases a clear organizing center. In the chicken wing bud, a small group of cells, the so-called ZPA (see Fig. 10.7) is decisive for the formation of the digits. In some insects, a small area at the posterior pole of the egg, the activation center, has to be present for a normal development (see Fig. 8.1). Frequently after an experimental interference a sequence of structures up to the most terminal structures are formed, e.g. UV irradiation can induce an additional insect abdomen (see Fig. 8.4), or an imperfect wound healing of an insect leg can lead to two new distal leg parts (see Fig. 9.7).

In contrast, systems which show intercalary regeneration seem to depend much less on special organizing centers but rather on an interaction between neighbouring cells (or groups of cells) at each level of the sequence, detecting and repairing any discontinuity. While in non-intercalating systems the tendency for a unidirectional proximodistal or anteroposterior transformation exists, in intercalating systems there are mainly the distal elements which regenerate the missing parts in a distal-proximal transformation (see Fig. 13.1; Bohn, 1972; French, 1976a; Nübler-Jung, 1977). On the basis of these differences one should expect that the two processes are controlled by different mechanisms. Two possibilities can be envisaged for the generation of sequences. On the one hand, the local concentration of a gradedly distributed substance, the morphogen, determine the particular structure at the particular location. In terms of Wolpert (1969, 1971) it is the positional information and its interpretation which causes the sequence. The second possibility consists of a mutual induction of neighbouring structures. Explicit models of both types will be given and comparison with biological systems will reveal that positional information and its interpretation can account for the determination of segmented structures such as the insect body, the insect legs or the digits of vertebrates. In contrast the pattern formation within insect segments seems to be of the mutual induction type (p.?ff). The differences listed above in the ability to intercalate and in the requirement for an organizing region will find straightforward explanations in these models.

7.2 Sources, sinks and the shape of the gradients

It has long been argued (Boveri, 1901; Child, 1929, 1941) that spatial organization could be accomplished by the graded distribution of substances termed morphogens. Wolpert (1969, 1971) developed this idea further into the concept of positional information. He pointed out that the size of an embryonic system is small when determination occurs, of the order of 1 mm or 100 cells across. Diffusion combined with local production and destruction at opposite ends, can form a gradient of this size within a few hours (Crick, 1970). This order of magnitude seems reasonable. Gradient formation involving diffusion in an area with
7.2. SOURCES, SINKS AND THE SHAPE OF THE GRADIENTS

Figure 7.1: (a-c) Concentration profiles of morphogenetic substances, generated by different source-sink arrangements and their dependence on field size. (a) A linear gradient can be formed by a source (here at the right side) and a sink (left). The concentration around the source will depend very much on the distance between the source and the sink, as demonstrated by the long and the short curve. (b) A uniform breakdown in addition to that at the terminal sink leads to an approximately size-independent concentration at the source and at the sink, since the concentration around the source depends more on the local decay rate. The relative concentration increase per unit length is approximately constant which facilitates the discrimination between different concentrations during the interpretation of positional information by the cells. (c) A simpler system consists only of a terminal source and a uniform breakdown. The advantage of simplicity is counterbalanced by the problem that, at the end opposite to the source, the concentration is size-dependent and shallow. Nevertheless, the central and source-containing portion of the gradient can be used to supply positional information; an asymmetric location of the determination of the structures is then to be expected. Positional information produced in this way seems to be used in the determination of segments in insects or of the digits in chicken limbs (Fig.10.7).

a dimension of the order of 1 cm, on the other hand, would require a full day. It is thus tempting to speculate that the spatial development of an organism or of parts of it is controlled by a graded distribution of a substance during a stage of development where the extension of the region is of the order of 1 mm or less, and that the local concentration determines the further developmental pathway of each cell.

There are several ways to set up a graded distribution. The assumption of a morphogen source and/or sink alone would only shift the problem of morphogenesis to another level as long as no explanation is provided as to how and where they arise in an initially undifferentiated tissue. The mechanism of short-range autocatalysis and long-range inhibition described above can provide local high concentrations which may act as sources or sinks, and, in addition, explains why they usually appear at the boundaries of the system. A linear gradient can be obtained with a source at one side and a sink at the other (Crick, 1970), but such an arrangement has some disadvantages. First, the size regulation is poor; the concentration around the source depends on the distance between the source and the sink (Fig.7.1a) unless there is a homeostatic mechanism by which the source strength is increased for smaller sizes. As a physical analogy, if a house has thinner walls, it requires more heating to maintain the same internal temperature, or the same inside-outside temperature gradient. Secondly, a linear gradient signifies that the relative morphogen increase per unit length is high at low morphogen concentration and low at high morphogen concentration. Therefore, the cell must be able to measure high concentrations much more precisely than low concentrations if it is to achieve the same spatial accuracy throughout the tissue. Both problems are avoided if the morphogen decays not only at the terminal sink.
but, to some extent, everywhere (Fig.7.1b). The concentration around the source is then nearly independent of the total size and determined mainly by the local decay rate. The slope is steeper in the area of high morphogen concentration with an approximately constant relative change per unit length, as would be desired for uniform reading accuracy. In addition, the time required to reach the steady-state concentration is much shorter. Therefore, much more convenient for cell specification than a linear gradient produced by a morphogen source and sink is an approximately exponential gradient formed by a terminal source with an overall decay of the morphogen. A local sink at the other boundary would maintain the morphogen at a low level, improving in this way the size-regulation.

In sea urchins, both, the animal and the vegetal pole is of importance. Removal of vegetal cells leads to an “animalization” of the embryo and vice versa. As an explanation, Runnström (1929) has put forward the double gradient hypothesis. However, a source, overall degradation plus local sink system would explain the data as well. Let us assume a source at the vegetal and a sink at the animal pole. Removal of the source region, especially of the micromeres, would lead to a general decrease of the morphogen and therefore yield an animalized embryo. The other way round, removal of the sink region (cells at the animal pole) would lead to a general increase of morphogen and therefore to embryos of the vegetal type (enlargement of the endoderm). A combination of the animal half (sink) and micromeres (source) forms a complete larva, despite the fact that most cells of the ventral half are missing since a source-sink combination can show a good size regulation (Fig.7.1c). Lithium ions have a vegetatizing effect. After culture for some time in a medium containing lithium ions, parts of the animal portion of an embryo can act in a similar way as the most vegetal cells, the micromeres (see Hörstadius, 1973). In terms of the model lithium causes a general increase in the source strength. In contrast, rhodamine ions act as an animalizing agent, presumably by poisoning the source.

The question arises whether a terminal sink is required at all in addition to the homogeneous destruction of the morphogen. For the formation of a local sink a separate activator - inhibitor system would be necessary. A relatively simple pattern-forming system would, therefore, consist of a local source only and a uniformly distributed decay of the morphogen but without a local sink. The price paid for this simplicity is that the gradient at the end which does not contain the source is shallow (assuming the boundaries are impermeable), and the absolute concentration here is size-dependent (Fig.7.1c). An appropriate positional information can be supplied only in the central region and that portion of the tissue containing the source of the gradient. In other words, only a certain concentration range of the gradient can be used. An advantage of using only a fraction of the gradient is that the mechanism then becomes insensitive to a size variation of the tissue over a certain range, since the fraction of the gradient used will be present both in a larger and a smaller field (Fig.7.1c). Indeed, if only one organizing center is involved, the area opposite to the organizing center seems, in most cases, not to be used for the specification of structures. Two examples are the determination process in early insect development and the determination
of the digits in chicken limb buds (Tickle et al., 1975) which will be discussed in detail below. The unused cells in the portion of tissue where the gradient is beyond the limit utilized for the relevant development may become necrotic and the constituent material recycled into the growing tissue. Or - vice versa - the utilization of the full region between the terminal boundaries of a diffusible gradient is a first indication that both ends contain organizing centers.
Chapter 8

A gradient model for the early insect development

Early insect development is a very instructive system for studying the determination of several structures within one process (for review, see Sander, 1976; Counce, 1973). After fertilization, the dividing nuclei in the egg spread out into the cytoplasm (cleavage stage) and migrate finally to the egg periphery, coming to rest in a well-defined layer (syncytic blastoderm stage). Only then are cell walls formed between the nuclei, leading to the cellular blastoderm. The embryo proper - the germ band - is formed out of a fraction of this blastoderm. The segments of the larva are linearly arranged and become individually distinguishable during germ band formation. The final pattern can be experimentally disturbed by centrifugation, ligation, thermocauterization, puncture, or UV irradiation. Since the egg is well supplied with nutritional substances, a development into recognizable structures is possible even after severe experimental disturbances. A large amount of experimental data have been accumulated for many different species, providing a challenging testing ground for any model.

There are pronounced differences between species, nevertheless, as a working hypothesis we will assume that the basic developmental control is similar in all species. Keeping this in mind, the results can be generalized in the following way: (i) The basic body pattern is controlled from the posterior egg pole. (ii) An instability exists at the anterior pole to form an abdomen instead of a head. (iii) Gaps can be formed in the sequence of segments which are not repaired by intercalation. (iv) The cells respond to the developmental signals in a stepwise manner. (v) Segmentation and giving individual segments a particular “name” are separate but interdependent processes.

For the positional information it would not matter whether the gradient runs anteroposteriorly or vice versa. Is it possible to distinguish between both possibilities without having yet biochemically identified substances carrying positional information? Experimental interference at both egg poles can have unexpected consequences. For instance, puncture or irradiation of the anterior pole of a Smittia egg can lead to the formation of an abdomen instead of a head (see Fig.8.4) whereas in Euscelis the shift of posterior pole material can lead to up to three
abdominal structures (see Fig.8.2). Insect development has been assumed therefore to be controlled by anterior and posterior determinants (Kalthoff, 1976). It has been shown, however, that many irradiation, plasma shift and ligation experiments are explicable under the assumption of a gradient arising from the posterior pole alone (Meinhardt, 1977). The sensitivity of the anterior pole reflects more an instability against the formation of a second source. Since it is believed that the control of insect development is a paradigm for the control of development in general, this model should be described in some detail and compared with the experimental observations.

8.1 The “activation center” - an organizer region at the posterior pole

Seidel (1929) found evidence in *Platycnemis* for an “activation center”, a small area at the posterior pole which is necessary for the organized development of the embryo. The fate-map indicates that this activation center does not participate in the formation of the embryo proper; instead its duty is to organize the embryo. An exclusion of the posterior eighth of the egg by a ligation suppresses embryonic development (Fig.8.1). However, the exclusion of only a slightly smaller posterior fragment leads to a normal development. If the operation is made early in the development, the result is either a completely normal development or no development at all; no intermediate forms are observed. No such center can be detected at the anterior pole since a similar constriction there leads always to normal development.

If one assumes that the anteroposterior organization of the egg is accomplished by a morphogen gradient which is generated by an activator-inhibitor system, these experiments tell much about the orientation and shape of the distributions. Evidently, the autocatalytic center must be localized at the posterior pole. The fact that no pattern regenerates after an early elimination of the posterior pole indicates that a small basic inhibitor production (activator-independent, $\rho_1$ in Eq.3.2) can suppress the autocatalysis at very low activator concentrations. The smallness of the activation center indicates that the activator maximum is very narrow, otherwise a regeneration of the pattern and therefore normal development would be expected even after removal of a much larger fragment. On the other hand, if the activator maximum is very sharp, the activator concentration is very low in almost the whole egg space and is, therefore, incapable of supplying positional information. However, any substance with a more shallow distribution, produced by the very localized activator maximum could act as morphogen. Since the inhibitor production is activator-controlled and since the inhibitor has, due to its higher diffusion rate, a graded distribution throughout the total area, the inhibitor is a reasonable candidate for the morphogen. Our assumption will be, therefore, that a high activator concentration is formed at the posterior pole and that the cells or nuclei and their immediate plasma environment are instructed by the local inhibitor concentration which segment they must form. In this scheme,
8.1. ORGANIZER REGION AT THE POSTERIOR POLE

Figure 8.1: The importance of the posterior pole in insect development. (a,b) Normal development of an embryo of a dragonfly is possible only if less than ca. 1/8 of the posterior egg is excluded by an early ligation (Seidel, 1929), otherwise the blastoderm cells do not differentiate (b). A similar ligation at the anterior pole is without effect. (c,d) Simulation: In this and the following simulation, it is assumed that the positional information is generated by an activator (top)-inhibitor (bottom) system and that the distributions have attained a steady state (as shown in Fig.4.1) during oogenesis. To show the reaction of the system to the experimental interference, both concentrations are plotted as function of the anteroposterior position and time. (c) After removal of the activator maximum, regeneration can take place if sufficient activator remains in the egg to initiate the autocatalysis, restoring the gradient. (d) After complete removal of the activator maximum, its reformation depends on the small constitutive activator and inhibitor production ($\rho_0$ and $\rho_1$ in Eq.3.2). To maintain a monotonically graded distribution, secondary maxima have to be suppressed and this requires a low $\rho_0$ and/or high $\rho_1$. This can suppress the reformation of the removed maxima and no positional information would be supplied.

The inhibitor plays a dual role: It activates particular control genes and suppresses the formation of other activated areas.

The all-or-nothing effect after removal of the posterior fractions of the egg is easily explained on the basis of the model: either sufficient activator remains to overcome the basic inhibitor level and to reform the distributions via autocatalysis or all concentrations drop to a very low level (Fig.8.1d).

In further experiments, Seidel (1935) removed large parts of the activation center by burning with a hot needle. He was surprised by the result that even more than half of the posterior pole can be burnt and still yield normal development. With a gradual elimination of a constitutive source one would expect a gradual decrease in the morphogen concentration. But an autocatalytically activated source will restore the pattern as long as sufficient activator is available to initiate the autocatalysis.
CHAPTER 8. EARLY INSECT DEVELOPMENT

Figure 8.2: Evidence of autocatalysis and long range inhibition in insect embryogenesis. (a-e) Experiments of Sander (1961a, 1962) with eggs of the leaf hopper *Euscelis*. Normal (a) and altered germ band pattern after shift of the posterior pole material (●) and ligation: either a symmetric (b) or a reverted sequence of abdominal segments (c) results. (d,e) If some time elapses between the shift (d) and ligation (e), a complete embryo is formed in the anterior fragment. Up to three abdomina can be formed within one egg. (f-h) Model calculation: Shift of the symbionts is assumed to cause some redistribution of the activator. A break in the distributions indicates the time of an experimental interference. Despite the fact that the redistribution can be only vaguely controlled, only two new distributions are possible. Either (f) both maxima coexist keeping maximum distance from each other and a symmetric pattern emerges, corresponding to the result sketched in (b) or (g) the new maximum dominates over the old one via the long-ranging inhibitor, the resulting pattern has a reversed polarity. (h) If some time elapses between the redistribution of activator and the ligation, the anterior part is "infected" with sufficient activator that, due to the autocatalysis of the activator, complete gradients are formed. This corresponds to the result (e). To have a convenient perspective, the distributions in (h) are 90° rotated (after Meinhardt, 1977).

8.2 Evidence for autocatalysis and lateral inhibition - Pattern formation in leaf-hopper embryo *Euscelis*

More support for the positional information concept and for the organization from the posterior pole can be deduced from experiments with the eggs of the leaf-hopper *Euscelis* (Sander, 1959, 1960, 1961a,b). There, a ball of symbionts is located at the posterior pole of the egg. These symbionts, bacteria necessary for the normal development of the embryo, are implanted in the egg by the mother. A dislocation of this posterior pole material in an anterior direction has a dramatic effect on the further development. After shift and ligation, up to three abdominal structures can be formed within one egg, some with reversed polarity. The main results are sketched in Fig.8.2 and can be summarized as follows:

1. After a shift of the symbionts and a ligation of the egg, partial embryos are formed in the posterior part. They have either a symmetric or a reversed
(2.) The anterior half of the blastoderm does not participate in the formation of the embryo proper. However, after an anterior shift of the symbionts and a delayed ligation, a complete embryo can be formed in the anterior fragment even if the symbionts are not included in that fragment. Sander (1960) has concluded that the important factor is not the symbionts themselves but some “posterior pole material” spreading out from them.

Similarly as in Seidel’s experiment one has to conclude that a small area controls the whole pattern formation in the anteroposterior dimension. The symbionts provide a handle to manipulate this area. The experiments are explicable by the theory assuming that some activated plasma is shifted with the symbionts (Meinhardt, 1977). Traces of this activated plasma can develop a fully activated source, preferentially at the physical boundaries of the (ligated) egg. In contrast, a stable morphogen source subdivided into two or three parts would lead to a much reduced maximum morphogen concentration and no abdominal structure would be expected - in contradiction to the experiment. The newly formed maximum can either be dominant over the old one, leading to a reversed morphogen distribution or both maxima can coexist, leading to the symmetric pattern (Fig.8.2). Obviously, there is some ambiguity between polar and symmetric patterns after an experimental interference. This is also a property of the theory and therefore an explanation is given of why minor and uncontrollable differences can lead to the two strikingly different, but well defined, alternative patterns. If sufficient time elapses between shift and ligation, the newly formed maximum can spread out, the anterior portion becomes “infected” and a complete pattern can be formed there (Fig.8.2h). This observation also supports the autocatalytic aspect of the theory.

Vogel (1978) has separated three fragments of Euscelis eggs by two ligations. He observed that the central fragment has to have a relatively large size if a single pattern element is to occur while some little additional space is sufficient to add further segments. This fits nicely into the model where a minimum extension (range of the activator) is required to form a pattern. Around this critical size, the concentration range depends sensitively upon the size of the field. The maximum concentration and the concentration range of the gradient may be reduced (see Fig.4.1a). The concentration would not be high enough to form the complete abdomen. The most posterior structures are thoracic structures, in agreement with Vogel’s observation.

8.3 Formation of posterior structures at the anterior pole

After certain experimental interferences, many species form abdominal structures instead of head structures in their anterior portion. Frequently, a completely symmetric development is observed. The experimental treatments evoking such “double abdomen” (DA) malformation are quite diverse: UV irradiation (Yajima, 1964; Kalthoff and Sander, 1968) or puncturing (Schmidt et al., 1975) of
Figure 8.3: The mutation bicaudal in Drosophila (Nüsslein-Volhard, 1977, 1979). (a) Mirror-symmetrical first instar larva with two abdomens. Head and thoracic structures are missing. (b) An asymmetric double-abdomen embryo. Since the terminal structures are present but the number of segments is different on both sides, one or two abdominal segments must be missing on one side. This gap is obviously not repaired by intercalation. (c) For comparison, a normal larva. A1...A8: abdominal segments; PS: the most posterior structure, the posterior spiracles; T3: metathorax; H: head. (Photographs kindly supplied by Nüsslein-Volhard).

the posterior pole, temporary ligation (van der Meer, 1978) and centrifugation (Yajima, 1960). Double abdomen formation has also been found in a maternal effect mutant of Drosophila (Bull, 1966; Nüsslein-Volhardt, 1977).

In the model, the abdominal structures are formed where the inhibitor concentration is high. The formation of additional posterior structures at unusual locations would indicate the triggering of a second activator maximum, establishing a second morphogen source. An especially favorable location for the formation of a second activation is the anterior pole, since here the inhibitor has its lowest concentration and any unspecific reduction of the inhibitor concentration may be sufficient to induce a new center of activation. This is in agreement with the unspecific modes of double abdomen (DA) induction already mentioned. The induction of a DA has similarities with the unspecific induction of a second amphibian embryo (Waddington et al., 1936). However, in amphibians, it is not the anteroposterior axis but the dorsoventral axis which becomes duplicated, forming a dorsoventral-dorsal pattern which leads to two parallel aligned embryos. After DA-formation in insects, the two embryos are not separated. Both gradients overlap because the two sources are not sufficiently remote from each other.

Fig. 8.3 shows photographs of a normal and of DA (bicaudal) larvae of Drosophila. Important for the gradient model is that the anterior half of the embryo is not merely transformed into the posterior half. In the center of a normal blastoderm, the Metathorax is layed down (Lohs-Schardin et al., 1979) while in DA-embryos, the plane of symmetry is very variable but always located in one of the abdominal segments. Therefore, the fate map of far more than the half of the blastoderm is changed. As discussed below in more detail, this is expected from the overlap of two gradients and provides a crucial support for the assumption of a diffusible signal.
8.3. DOUBLE ABDOMEN

Figure 8.4: Double abdomen (DA) formation in midge Smittia. (a) normal embryo. (b) Irradiation of the anterior quarter of a Smittia egg can lead to a completely symmetric embryo with one abdomen at each pole (Kalthoff and Sander, 1968; drawn after Kalthoff, 1976). (c-f) Results of the experiments of Kalthoff (1971). The dose of the irradiation of the anterior quarter was adjusted to yield about 50 % DA; the dose of additional irradiations was somewhat smaller, in order to minimize the number of eggs which fail to develop at all. The frequency of DA-formation is given in percent (g-j) Model: The inhibitor is assumed to be UV-sensitive. Shown is the response of the activator (top) - inhibitor (bottom) system as function of position and time after irradiation. A reduction of the inhibitor concentration (black bar) at the anterior pole (g) allows an increase of the activator concentration which can, via autocatalysis, develop into a full second maximum. The inhibitor distribution (positional information) at the anterior pole becomes a mirror image of that of the posterior pole. Experiment: While an irradiation of the second anterior quarter is without effect (d), applied together with an irradiation of the first quarter, it considerably increases the probability of DA induction (e). Model: The removed inhibitor in a central area is rapidly replenished by the nearby source (h) and, therefore, without effect. But such a removal delays the restoration of the inhibitor concentration after an irradiation of the anterior quarter. Therefore, the activator increase after an irradiation of the anterior half is much more rapid (i) and the probability of reaching the critical level for the DA-formation is increased. Experiment: (f) An irradiation at the posterior pole is without serious effect (0 % DA), but such an irradiation cures partly the anterior radiation damage. (j) Model: Inhibitor reduction at the activated site leads to an overshoot of the activator and, consequently, also in the inhibitor concentration. This is without serious effect, since all concentrations necessary for the determination of any particular structure remain present. But the overall increased inhibitor concentration reduces the activator increase after irradiation of the anterior end; the activator increase may not be sufficient to reach the threshold for further autocatalysis and may, therefore, disappear.

In the midge Smittia, DA-formation can be induced by UV irradiation (Kalthoff and Sander, 1968) or by a puncture (Schmidt et al., 1975) at the anterior pole. According to the model, the UV irradiation may either destroy the inhibitor or the inhibitor-producing structures. The results of a very instructive set of experiments by Kalthoff (1971) are shown in Figure 8.4, together with their explanation in terms of the theory assuming that the inhibitor is UV-sensitive. Due to the inhibitor reduction, the activator concentration increases. If this activator increase is sufficiently high, a new activator maximum develops via autocatalysis, even if the inhibitor concentration is rapidly restored. If the activator concentration fails to reach the critical level, the activator increase will disappear. In agreement with the experiment, the formation of a second activation is an all-or-nothing event. Substantial support for the postulated interaction between an activator and a long-ranging inhibitor can be derived from the fact that a simul-
Figure 8.5: Evidence for a long ranging morphogen. During normal development, segment 5, a thoracic element is formed at the center (see Fig.8.7). In DA, the central element is around segment 8 or 9, an abdominal segment. The central segment is changed even though only a small anterior position has been irradiated. According to the model, after induction of a second activator maxima, inhibitor (---), diffuses from both sites towards the center, causing an elevation of the inhibitor concentration there (positional information). This leads - far away from the site of experimental interference - to the determination of more posterior structures, in agreement with the experimental observation. (a) activator (——) and inhibitor (---) distribution in the normal and in DA embryo (-o-o-o-). (b) Fatemap of the normal embryo as derived from late ligation experiments (Fig.8.7) (c) calculated fatemap of a DA-embryo (after Meinhardt, 1977).

Simultaneous posterior irradiation reduces the probability of induction of DA, so to say, it cures the anterior radiation damage. A reduction of the inhibitor at the activated (posterior) site produces an overshoot of activator. As a result, more inhibitor is subsequently produced which spreads out quickly by diffusion and then acts to reduce the probability of triggering a second activation center at the anterior pole (Fig.8.4f,j).

After centrifugation of Smittia eggs, Rau and Kalthoff (1980) found embryos with double-abdomen and double head formation. Most interestingly, they also find a complete reversal of the embryo in relation to the egg axis, the head forming at the posterior egg pole and the abdomen at the anterior egg pole. This observation fits nicely with the self-regulatory properties of the proposed mechanism and the possible shapes which the gradient can attain (see Fig.4.1).

8.4 The long range character of the positional signal

The altered central segment in DA embryos offers a crucial support for the gradient model. From a central ligation of a Smittia egg at the blastoderm stage - at a stage when the segment pattern is fixed - we know that the segment No.5, a thorax segment, is laid down in the center (see Fig.8.7). However, in double-abdomen embryos, the plane of symmetry at the center is, as a rule, formed in segment 8 or 9. According to the model, in DA embryos, the morphogen diffuses
Figure 8.6: Indication for a “negative” size regulation and the absence of anterior determinants in the leaf hopper *Euscelis* (Sander, 1959). (a, b) Only the posterior part of the blastoderm egg is used for the formation of the germband: a ligation at the blastoderm stage at 45 % EL leads to the formation of a complete embryo (b). (c) An early ligation at the same position leads to an omission of the head. In the smaller area, less structure are formed compared to the same region in the unoperated egg (negative size regulation). (d) A complete embryo is formed, however, in a larger fragment (57 % EL), indicating that the omission of head structures does not result from the absence of anterior determinants. Model: (e) Normal activator (---) and inhibitor (- - - -) distribution. (f,g) Due to the ligation, the inhibitor (++++) accumulates. The low concentration required for head formation is present only if the fragment is larger. (h-j) Assumed fate maps of normal (h) and calculated fate map of the ligated eggs (i,j).

From both sides into the center and the concentration is thus increased there. This has the consequence that a more posterior structure is formed (Fig.8.5). From the simulation of the early ligation experiments one can estimate the diffusion constants and lifetimes of the activator and inhibitor. Applying this to a simulation of a double abdomen formation leads to segment 9 as the central element, in essential agreement with the model. After an early ligation, also the segment 9 is formed in the posterior part of the egg (Fig.8.7). The fact that the same element is formed in the center after the two very different manipulations - anterior UV irradiation and central ligation - is a straightforward consequence of the gradient model. The ligation renders impossible any flow through the center and the morphogen accumulates. Similarly, after DA induction the flow at the center is, due to the symmetry, also zero. Therefore, the same concentration and thus the same structure is expected after both manipulations. This is exactly what has been observed. This may be the best evidence available that the pattern is controlled by a long-ranging diffusible substance and not, for instance, by a chain of induction.
8.5 Negative size regulation - a phenomenon characteristic for gradient systems generated by a local source

In many developmental systems, the complete set of structures is formed even if a substantial portion of the developmental field is removed. Examples are the dorsoventral axis of amphibians (Fig. 13.8, p. 144) or insects (Fig. 12.4, p. 126). However, the pattern regulation of the anteroposterior axis of insects exhibits the reverse behaviour. In a fragment of an egg, resulting from an early ligation (at the nuclear cleavage stage), fewer segments are formed then in an area of the same size as in an undisturbed egg, so to say, a negative size regulation. We will show that this is a straightforward consequence whenever a pattern is controlled by a morphogen gradient which is generated by a local source and diffusion.

Let us regard first only the posterior, or source-containing fragment of a ligated egg. In terms of the model, a ligation during the cleavage stage introduces a diffusion barrier. This leads to an accumulation of the morphogen. Due to the ligation and morphogen increase, a particular cell will get a more posterior specification. Thus a particular structure will appear in a more anterior position. The fate maps of ligated and non-ligated eggs of *Drosophila* (Newman and Schubiger, 1980) have provided a direct evidence for the predicted anterior shift. The segments which would have been determined just anteriorly of the ligation are instead omitted.

This feature of the model has counterparts in many experimental observations. Ligating an egg during the cleavage stage leads to an omission of segments, for example, in *Euscelis* (Sander, 1959), *Calliphora* (Nitschmann, 1959), *Bruchidius* (Jung, 1966), *Protophormia* (Herth and Sander, 1973) or *Drosophila* (Schubiger and Wood, 1977). In *Euscelis*, for instance, a ligation at 44 % EL (EL = egg length, 0 % = posterior pole) (Fig. 8.6) at the blastoderm stage leads to a complete embryo in the posterior portion. The same ligation made earlier leads to an embryo lacking the head lobe. Fig. 8.6 shows that this is expected from the accumulation of the morphogen. An early ligation placed more anteriorly, at 57 % EL, leads to a complete embryo. In the enlarged space sufficiently low morphogen concentrations are possible despite the accumulation. The latter observation indicates that the incomplete embryo formed after the early 44 % EL ligation does not results from an elimination of “anterior determinants”, spreading out from the anteriorely egg pole since these influences would be eliminated by a 57 % EL ligation as well. These experiments also rule out the argument that the omission of structures result from a damage of cells. As the late 44 % ligation shows, the blastoderm cells located more anterior are normally not used in the embryo formation. The omission of segments does not result from a damage of cells but from a change in the positional information to which the cells are exposed.

The phenomenon of negative size-regulation also provides a strong argument against another type of model stipulating that the most posterior structure is induced at the posterior pole and that the more anterior segments result from a
Figure 8.7: The influence of a diffusion barrier and evidence for a stepwise, unidirectional interpretation of positional information. (a-f) Schematic drawing of the ligation experiments with eggs of the insect *Smittia* (Sander, 1975b). Inset in (g): Schematic drawing of a Smittia embryo. Segments are designated H, 1, 2, ... 16. (a-f) Experimentally observed germ band fragments after the ligation. The first and last segment formed in each germ band fragment is indicated. (a-c) After a ligation during the blastoderm stage very few - if any - segments are omitted: the egg behaves as a mosaic. This allows the drawing-up of an approximate fatemap (h). (d-f) If, however, the ligation is made earlier, during the cleavage stage, many segments are omitted, but the terminal segments always remain present. Model: After a ligation, the inhibitor (positional information, - - - -) accumulates on the source-containing posterior side (g), which leads to a shift of the segments in an anterior direction (i). Some of the segments normally determined posterior to the ligation would no longer be formed; in this example the elements 5 - 8 would be omitted (h,i). In the anterior portion, on the other hand, the inhibitor concentration decreases to a level which normally never occurs (g) and no element would be expected to be formed, which is at variance with the experimental observation (e). This contradiction has forced the assumption that the determination proceeds under the influence of the morphogen stepwise and unidirectional to more posterior structures until the determination corresponds to the local morphogen concentration. The structure formed in the anterior part after a ligation reveal how far the determination has already advanced at the time of the ligation (j). The pattern in the posterior portion depends on the extent of morphogen accumulation and the time available to adapt the determination to this increased morphogen concentration.

8.6 The interpretation of positional information is a stepwise unidirectional and irreversible process

After a ligation of a *Smittia* egg (Fig.8.7, Sander, 1975a) the terminal structures remain present but the more central segments, normally formed from blastoderm cells located on both sides of the ligation, are omitted. Note that the gap in the sequence of segments is asymmetric. If a ligation is performed more anteriorly, the segments omitted belong more to the posterior portion, while in the anterior part, a head lobe is formed nearly independent of the time of operation. But if the ligation is performed at a more posterior location, more segments are lost in the posterior part than gained in the anterior part. From the experimentally
known omission of segments in the posterior portion and the minimum time in which a second activation can be formed, one can estimate the diffusion rate of the inhibitor to be $5 \times 10^{-9}$ cm/s and and its lifetime at 1h.

A description of the missing segments in the anterior portion with these parameters is not in agreement with the experiments. From the estimated short lifetime, one would expect a relative fast decay of the inhibitor (morphogen) such that no segments at all would be formed in the anterior part (Fig.8.7). On the contrary, the head lobe is always formed. As Figures 8.7a and 8.7d show, a ligation at 60 % EL of a Smittia egg leads to nearly the same segments being formed in the anterior part independent of whether the ligation is made early (during the cleavage) or late (during the blastoderm stage). In such a ligation experiment, a particular cell or nucleus seems to be determined at the time of the ligation if located anterior to the ligation, but the final pathway can be changed if located posterior to the ligation. Extensive reprogramming seems to be possible so that a more anterior structure can be reprogrammed to form a more posterior structure but not vice versa.

The explanation I have proposed for this stipulates how the cells measure the local morphogen concentration. Originally, all cells are programmed to form the most anterior structure. Under the influence of the morphogen, the cells proceed stepwise to higher (more posterior) determinations from “head” to “thorax” etc., until the determination corresponds to the local morphogen concentration. A step in the determination is - as in other developmental systems - essentially irreversible. If the morphogen disappears before the final determination is achieved, the stepping through of the different determinations will be interrupted. The determination would remain unchanged at the stage already reached. Such a situation exists in the anterior part after a ligation. If the morphogen increases due to experimental interference, for instance by the accumulation of the morphogen in the posterior portion after a ligation or after the induction of a second activation by UV irradiation, the determination can proceed. Structures corresponding to more posterior positions would then be formed. The omission of segments on both sites of an ligation results therefore from different reasons. On the posterior side, it depends on the accumulation of the morphogen; at the anterior site, it reveals how far the interpretation had progressed. This explains the asymmetry of the gap. At an early stage, when only the most anterior segments were already determined, a headlobe is formed in the anterior fragment, fairly independent of the position of the ligation (Fig.8.7d,f). In the posterior fragment, the lowest morphogen concentration and therewith the most anterior structure depends essentially on the position of the ligation.

The type of stepwise and irreversible determination described above appears to be a general process. The proximodistal determination of insect legs (p.) as well as the anteroposterior determination of vertebrate limbs (Fig.10.7) follows the same rules.

Determination - or commitment - of a group of cells to form, say, a head lobe must consist of switching “on” a particular set of genes. Detailed models for the selection of gene activity under morphogen control will be given below (Fig.11.5
8.7 Alternative Models

Other mechanisms which have been proposed for the control of insect development may appear reasonable as well. However, a look into their consequences reveals features which are not supported by the experiments mentioned above. Some of them are listed below, together with conflicting observations. Maybe, some of these conflicts may be cured by additional assumptions. The discussion should show how stringent the experimental observations really are for any model.

Model A: The prepattern specifies only the terminal element, the abdomen; the missing elements are specified by a chain of induction (such as shown in Fig.13.3). Problem: A zone is expected in which the final determination takes place and which moves in a wave-like manner over the field. A ligation at a particular location should lead to different results depending on whether the wave has passed this position or not. If passed already, the development would be normal in both fragments and indistinguishable from a mosaic development. In contrast, when the ligation is made before the wave has passed this location, the development would be normal in the posterior fragment, but no development would be expected in the anterior fragment. In contrast, experimental observations show that gaps in the sequences of segments become gradually smaller if the ligation is made at a later developmental stage and that specially in the posterior fragment segments are missing also (Sander, 1976).

Model B: Two gradients, for instance a and p, with opposite orientations are formed by local sources on each end of the egg (anterior or posterior determinants). The ratio of both concentrations (a/p or p/a) is used as positional information (Sander, 1961a). Problems: After ligation, the concentration of each component drops to very low values in the fragments not containing its source. The values are lower than would be found anywhere in the normal embryo. Therefore the ratio would attain very high values on one side of the ligation and very low values on the other values which are out of the range used to specify structures in the undisturbed organism and this is clearly at variance with the observed gap behavior.

Model C: Head and abdominal structures are determined by anterior or posterior determinants and missing structures are filled in by some sort of intercalation from both sides at the discontinuity. Problems: In a bicaudal embryo (see Fig.8.3) or in a UV-induced double abdomen it has to be assumed that both ends bear posterior determinants. No discontinuity would be present to initiate the intercalation and therefore no pattern formation at all would be expected.

Model D: Similar as model C, but in the center where neither anterior nor posterior determinants are present, thoracic structures are determined (Vogel, 1978) and again missing structures are made by intercalation. Problems: Ligation through the center should contain at each side thoracic structures and normal development is expected. Double abdomina should show thoracic structures in the center. Neither of these expectations is in agreement with the experimental
CHAPTER 8. EARLY INSECT DEVELOPMENT

Model E: Specification of the field is achieved by a sequence of binary subdivisions (Kauffman et al., 1978). A gradient-like prepattern bisects a field initially into two parts, anterior and posterior (0 and 1). By shrinkage of the diffusion range the prepattern changes into a bell-shaped distribution, subdividing the two halves into four quarters (00, 01, 11, 10), and so on. Problems:

(1) If part of the egg were removed, the pattern would be restored after corresponding shrinkage of the chemical wavelength. In a ligation experiment, such a mechanism would not lead to a gap but would produce a normal set of body parts in both halves of the egg. The only defect could be the absence of some fine structure if the shrinkage of the diffusion range remained insufficient. In contrast, the experiments show that each half produces even fewer structures than would be expected from mosaic development.

(2) At the blastoderm stage, the thoracic segments becomes subdivided into anterior and posterior compartments (Garcia-Bellido et al., 1973, 1976). At that time wings and legs are not yet separated. On the basis of chemical wavelength one would expect an organization of the large dorsoventral dimension first and only then a finer subdivision of the narrow segments into the even narrower anterior and posterior compartments.

(3) A cell which has seen a zero-concentration twice must be in a different state (state zero-zero) compared with a cell which has been exposed to “nothing, but only once” (state zero). This would require, for example, an additional counting or clock mechanism synchronized with the pattern-forming process. The relatively long-time interval in which a double abdomen can be induced in an insect (Ripley and Kalthoff, 1981) argues against a clock mechanism and against early irreversible binary decisions.

8.8 Open questions

The gradient model, despite of providing a unified explanation for the many experimental observations, is not free of problems. Some observations which are difficult to integrate should be mentioned.

1. After temporal ligation of eggs of the beatle Callosobruchus, van der Meer (1978) found a double abdomen formation in the right or the left half only while the other half was normal. Possibly, the cells in the non-affected half are unable to respond to the altered morphogen distribution.

2. Centrifugation of eggs of Smittia (Rau and Kalthoff, 1980) and of Chironomus (Yajima, 1960) can lead to the formation of symmetrical double heads (or double cephalon) embryos which lack thoracic and abdominal structures. A similar pattern has been observed in a mutant of Drosophila (Lohs-Schardin and Sander, 1976). A central activator maximum is expected as one possible pattern after an experimental interference (see Fig.4.1) but in such a case, two abdominal structures pointing with the posterior ends towards each other are expected.
Such patterns do occur in an *Euscelis* egg after a shift of the posterior pole material (Fig. 8.2e) but only if the egg is also ligated. It seems that the dorsal and the ventral side of the egg have to be brought into contact to enable a high point for the anteroposterior organization. This would guarantee that the dorsoventral and the anteroposterior pattern are oriented perpendicular to each other. An analogous observation has been made in planarians (see p. ). Therefore, it may be difficult to induce a full height peak in the center of an egg without a ligation. The symmetrical head-like structure mentioned above indicates a much reduced morphogen concentration.

3. *Drosophila* embryos, despite using a large fraction of the blastoderm, show a remarkable insensitivity of the segment pattern against a variation of genetically altered egg size (Nüsslein-Volhard, 1979). The size-regulation seems to be connected with the formation of anterior structures because double abdomen embryos form indeed fewer segments if the egg is smaller. This size-regulation could be achieved by a somewhat stronger sink property of the anterior egg pole, keeping the morphogen concentration low (see Fig. 7.1).
Chapter 9

Pattern formation in subfields: formation of new organizing regions by cooperation of compartments

In the preceding section, evidence has been presented that the positional information in an (insect) embryo is generated by autocatalysis and lateral inhibition. Under the influence of such a morphogen gradient, a subdivision into defined groups of differently determined cells is possible. The final spatial structure is, of course, much more complex than what would be achievable by the interpretation of one (or two orthogonal) gradients. Further subdivisions are clearly necessary. A possibility consists in the formation of secondary gradients and their subsequent interpretation. For example, a primary gradient may specify the future limb area and a secondary gradient can then specify the finer details of the limb, such as the digits. Detailed experimental data about pattern formation in developmental subfields are available for the imaginal disks of holometabolous insects and of the limb field in vertebrates. It will be shown that many of these experiments are explicable under the assumption that the boundaries between patches of differently determined cells, determined under the influence of the primary gradient(s) become the organizing regions for the developmental control of subfields (Meinhardt, 1980). Since the boundaries of existing structures give rise to the new structures, the existing and the new structures have necessarily the correct spatial relationship to each other. This allows a very reliable finer subdivision of a developing embryo.

9.1 Imaginal disks, their fate maps and compartment borders

Epithelial structures such as eyes, antennas, wings, halteres or legs are generated from nests of cells, the so-called imaginal disks (see Gehring and Nöthiger, 1973).
CHAPTER 9. COOPERATION OF COMPARTMENTS

Figure 9.1: The wing and its coordinate system. (a) The dorsal and ventral aspect of the wing. Below: the imaginal disk from which the corresponding adult structures are derived (after Bryant, 1975a; Garcia-Bellido et al., 1976). The border between the anterior (A) and posterior (P) compartments does not coincide with any morphologically recognizable structure while the dorsal (D) and ventral compartments form the corresponding wing surfaces as well as thoracic structures. (b-d) Model for the generation of the coordinate system. By cooperation of the A and the P compartment as well as of the D and the V compartment, two ridge-like morphogen profiles are generated (b,c). The symmetrical distributions are centred over the corresponding boundaries. The product of the A-P and D-V pattern has a cone-shaped distribution (d) which is appropriate to organize the proximodistal axis. Only those cells exposed at least to a low threshold concentration become imaginal disk cells. Cells exposed to a relative high concentration form the wing blade (e). The primary event is therefore the formation of the boundaries. The imaginal disk is formed, in a secondary event, from cells surrounding the intersection of the AP and DV boundary.

In Drosophila, the cells of the imaginal disks are almost completely determined before pupation begins, at the end of the third larval stage. Fragments transplanted directly into metamorphosing larvae differentiate according to their original position within their disk. This allows a fate map of the disk to be constructed. Fig.9.1 shows a wing disk and some of the corresponding adult structures. In the leg disk, the leg primordia are arranged in concentric rings (Schubiger, 1968, see Fig.9.2). The outer rings form the more proximal structures such as thorax and coxa, while the inner rings form the more distal structures such as tarsus and claws. The leg attains its final shape by a telescope-like extension of the central (distal) part.

Two features of the spatial determination of imaginal disks appear to be a key element in the understanding of how subpatterns are formed: their progressive compartmentalization (Garcia-Bellido et al., 1973, 1976; Steiner, 1976, Crick and Lawrence, 1975) and the properties of pattern regulation (Schubiger, 1971; French et al., 1976, Bryant, 1978). In this chapter we will develop a model about how compartmentalization and the generation of positional information in a subpattern are linked with one another. How compartments themselves can be formed is discussed elsewhere (p. pagerefpage:compartment and chapter 14).

One of the earliest developmental decisions is the separation into anterior and posterior compartments (Garcia-Bellido et al., 1973, 1976; Steiner, 1976). It occurs during or shortly after blastoderm formation. A group of cells and all their progeny, once determined to form, for instance, the anterior part of the leg or
9.2 Regeneration, duplication and distal transformation

Fragments of imaginal disks cultivated in the abdominal cavity of adult flies are capable of substantial pattern regulation. Two major types have been observed: either the structures remaining in the fragment are duplicated, leading to a mirror-symmetrical pattern; or the missing structures are regenerated. As the rule, when a disk is fragmented into two portions, the two fragments show complementary behavior: one fragment duplicates itself while the other regenerates (Schubiger, 1971; van der Meer and Ouweneel, 1974; Bryant, 1975a,b). It has further proved possible to predict on the basis of its size and geometric position...
within a disk whether a given fragment will duplicate or regenerate. The borderline between the fragments which regenerate and those which duplicate does not coincide with any compartment border. For instance, a fragment containing constituents of only the anterior leg compartment can regenerate all the missing structures of the leg. This pattern regulation has been successfully described by the formal polar coordinate model of French, Bryant and Bryant (1976). In this model it is stipulated that two positional parameters are of relevance for pattern regulation: position along the proximodistal axis and circumferential position. Circumferential positional values (particular determined states) are assigned to structures around the circumference of a disk, arranged like the numbers of a clock face. Two rules are sufficient to describe how the pattern is regulated: (i) The shortest intercalation rule: Whenever a fragment of a disk is removed, wound closure causes those cells at the wound surface to find themselves close to unusual neighbors. Missing structures are regenerated by intercalary regeneration according to the shortest intercalation rule. Only those structures which are necessary to reform a continuum will be regenerated. Whenever more than half of the positional values are removed, shortest intercalation leads to duplication; otherwise regeneration will occur. (ii) The complete circle rule: Distal transformation and outgrowth occurs whenever all the circumferential positional values are present, forming a complete circle. Duplicated structures (in which more than half the positional values are missing) are therefore not expected to show distal transformation.

As mentioned above, the borderline between fragments which regenerate and fragments which duplicate does not coincide with any compartment border. Compartments are therefore not an element of the polar coordinate model. Compartments are, however, the primary developmental subdivision of a disk. It will be shown how the two concepts can be linked.

9.3 Pattern formation by cooperation of compartments

In principle, a subpattern can be generated by autocatalysis and lateral inhibition as described in the preceding chapters. However, after interpretation of a
primary gradient, sharp boundaries exist between the patches of differently determined cells ("compartments"). These boundaries open a new possibility for the generation of positional information. Let us assume two patches with a common boundary which cooperate for the production of a substance which acts as a morphogen. Due to the required cooperation, the synthesis of the morphogen is possible only at the boundary. A symmetrical, ridge-like morphogen distribution centered over the boundary will result. Three compartments - similar as three countries - meet each other only at one point. If three compartments (or two pairs of compartments) have to cooperate, morphogen production is possible only at the point where cells of all compartmental specifications are close to each other. The point of intersection of the compartment borders becomes the source region of the morphogen. By diffusion and decay, a cone-shaped morphogen distribution is formed with the highest concentration at the intersection of the compartment borders (Fig.9.2). The local concentration is a measure of the distance from the intersection and can be used as positional information in the proximodistal dimension. The most distal structures are formed at the intersection of the compartments and the interpretation of the cone-shaped morphogen distribution leads in a straightforward manner to the circular arrangement of structures. The same morphogen distribution can determine which cells form the disk and which form the larval ectoderm. Only those cells exposed to a concentration above a certain threshold would participate in disk formation; no separate positional information system is required. According to this view, an imaginal disk never exists without subdivisions. The formation of the borders necessarily precedes the formation of the disk. Since the boundaries are determined under the influence of the primary organizing gradients, the emerging disks naturally have the correct orientation in respect to the body axis. The handedness of each disk is also determined since three patches, touching each other at one point, are sufficient to determine handedness in an unequivocal way.

Molecular mechanisms for such a cooperation are easily constructed. For instance, each compartment may be responsible for a particular step in the synthesis of the morphogen or each compartment may produce a diffusible co-factor which is required for morphogen production. Fig.9.2 and Fig.9.4 have been calculated in this way. The positional information may be generated in two steps. By the cooperation of the A-P and of the D-V compartments two ridge-like distributions are formed which can supply positional information for the anteroposterior and the dorsoventral dimension. The symmetrical distributions can be interpreted differently in the corresponding compartments, leading for instance to the partially symmetrical pattern of the wing. The product of the two ridge-like distributions then assumes the cone-shaped distribution (Fig.9.1), organizing the proximodistal dimension.

As discussed below, several lines of experimental evidence indicate that interpretation of proximodistal positional information in disks proceeds in a stepwise, unidirectional manner, i.e. in the same way as in the early insect embryogenesis (Fig.8.7). A distal determination, once obtained under the influence of the local morphogen concentration, seems to be irreversible. The “complete circle rule”
for distal transformation of French et al. (1976) which is difficult to interpret in molecular terms, is thus simplified to yield the straightforward mechanism of “cooperation of compartments”. The achievements of the complete circle rule, such as explanation of supernumerary appendages, remain valid, since demanding a complete circle is formally equivalent to requiring that cells of three or four sectors are close to each other.

The model links early compartmentalization and generation of positional information in the proximodistal dimension. Two stipulations are made: cooperation of compartments in the formation of a cone-shaped morphogen distribution, and response of the cells in a stepwise, unidirectional manner. Both assumptions are supported by experimental observations. It should be pointed out that the local morphogen concentration determines only, for instance, which leg segment a group of cell has to form. The fine structure within a segment is assumed to be generated by a different process chapter 13).

9.4 Evidence for the cooperation of compartments in the generation of positional information

The most distal structures are formed at the intersections of the major compartment borders. The tip of the wing is determined at the location where the A-P and the D-V border cross each other (Fig.9.1). In the leg disk, the precise location of the D-V border at the center is not known. However, the most distal structures, the two claws, are located on both sides of the A-P border and the D-V border points in that direction (Fig.9.2). The most distal structures are not located trivially at the center of the disk, since the posterior compartment is smaller. This is also true in earlier stages; the posterior compartment is made up of about half as many founder cells as is the anterior compartment (Garcia-Bellido et al., 1973).

Distal transformation of leg fragments requires a close juxtaposition of all compartmental specifications. As can be seen from the experiments of Schubiger and Schubiger (1978) and Strub (1977a) the upper lateral quarter of a leg disk fragment (Fig.9.3f) does not regenerate the removed distal primordia (center of the disk). It does not contain the ventral compartment. Similarly, the lower medial quarter (Fig.9.3b) contains the anterior-dorsal compartment only marginally and shows a low frequency of distal transformation. In contrast, a fragment which contains cells of all compartmental specifications shows distal transformation very frequently (Fig.9.3d).

A complete set of circumferential structures is not required for distal transformation. Distal transformation of leg disks and of the wing disk is possible without an initial regeneration of all proximal structures around the circumference. Schubiger and Schubiger (1978), for instance, have found distal transformation in a fragment as shown in Fig.9.4d without a preceding circumferential regeneration of the missing proximal structures. An analogous observation has been made by Karlsson (1980) for the wing disk. Our model is consistent with these ex-
experimentally discovered violations of the complete circle rule, since only a close juxtaposition of all major compartments is required.

The capability of a fragment which originated exclusively from the anterior leg compartment to show distal regeneration seems to contradict the model. However, compartment borders can be reformed during the regeneration of fragments. According to Schubiger and Schubiger (1978), the distal transformation of an anterior fragment is always associated with the regeneration of structures of the posterior compartment. The formation of new positional information for the proximodistal dimension in such a fragment is assumed to be a two-step process. The first step is regeneration of parts of the missing compartment(s) (see Fig.12.6). The second step is formation of a new morphogen distribution, centered over the new intersection of compartment boundaries. (In the polar coordinate model, ability of an anterior leg fragment to regenerate the missing members of the major compartments is accounted for by the assumption of a non-uniform spacing of positional values, see French et al, 1976).

In the wing disk, the data as to what extent cells can change their compartmental specification after experimental interference are less clear. (Garcia-Bellido and Nöthiger, 1976; Szabad et al., 1979) The A-P border seems to be more rigidly fixed than the D-V border. Thus it would be expected that a wing fragment, if it is to undergo distal regeneration, must include the anteroposterior compartment border. The dorsoventral compartment border, since it can be respecified, would be of less importance. This is in agreement with the experimental observations of Karlsson (1980) and Wilcox and Smith (1980).

Small marginal fragments of a wing disk do not usually show distal transformation by themselves (Bryant, 1975a,b) because they contain at most cells of only two compartments. When two marginal wing fragments derived from opposite positions of the disk are joined together, they frequently show regeneration of the missing distal structures. (Haynie and Bryant, 1976) This would be expected since these fragments together, generally contain cells from all major compartments. The same is valid also for an outer-ring fragment of a disk. Strong distal transformation also occurs after dissociation and reaggregation of imaginal disks (Strub, 1977b). This is expected from the model since in this procedure many new compartmental confrontations and hence morphogen sources are created.

The initiation of cell death in cell-autonomous cell-lethal mutants can lead to a partial or complete duplication or triplication of the leg (Postlethwait, 1978, Russell et al., 1977). According to the model, the primary event is a compartmental respecification. An explanation of how cell death can lead to a compartmental respecification is given below (see Fig.12.7). It is especially common that structures belonging to the posterior compartment are formed in an anterior environment. Respecification can lead to new intersections of compartmental boundaries and therefore to the establishment of additional morphogen maxima (Fig.9.4). An observation by Girton (1981) provides an especially convincing example of the connection between leg duplications and compartments. He found duplication and distally complete and incomplete triplications of legs (Fig.9.4). Drawing the structures of the triplicated legs at the level of bifurcation in the fate map reveals
Chapter 9. Cooperation of Compartments

Figure 9.4: Heatshock-induced leg duplications and triplications (Girton, 1981; Bryant and Girton, 1980). In addition to the normal leg (N) a single (D) or a pair of legs (T1, T2) is formed. In the latter case, the pair can be distally complete (b) or incomplete (c) and the pair can be partially (b) or completely fused (photographs kindly supplied by J. Girton). Explanation in terms of the model: Due to the heat shock (and cell death), part of the anterior compartment of a normal disc (d) becomes reprogrammed to posterior (see Fig. 12.7). This can lead to a new intersection (e) and consequent formation of an additional leg with opposite handedness (A, P, V clockwise or counter clockwise, see arrows). If the patch of posterior cells arises in a non-marginal position, two new intersections can be formed (f). This would lead to a pair of additional legs, as shown in (b). The closer the two new intersections are, the more distal the separation of the pair of legs will be. If the patch is close to but does not touch the ventral compartment border (g), cooperation is restricted, the maximum morphogen concentration is not reached and a fused pair of distally incomplete legs will be formed (as shown in c). The model provides an explanation of Bateson’s rule (Bateson, 1880) according to which the three limbs are formed in a plane (the new intersections are formed along the AD-AV border line) and the central limb has opposite handedness when compared with the two others (see arrows). (h-k) Computer calculations of the positional information created by intersections shown in (d-g).

Some of the observed duplications and triplications indicate clearly that no lateral inhibition is involved in this formation of new organizing regions. Two interactions can appear so close to each other that the resulting legs are fused over almost their entire length (Fig.9.4b). No indication can be found for competition or dominance of one leg over the other (in contrast, for instance, to the formation of new heads in hydra, Fig.6.2). Lateral inhibition is the antagonistic reaction necessary to localize autocatalysis and to suppresses the formation of identical structures in the surroundings. If an organizing region is formed by intersection of compartments, lateral inhibition is not required since the intersection is confined that distally complete outgrowth occurs only if cells of the ventral compartment are present (Fig.9.5). All duplicated legs contain the A-P boundary. Figs.9.4 d-k show the expected locations of compartmental respecification and the resulting morphogen distributions.
9.5. **STEPWISE UNIDIRECTIONAL INTERPRETATION**

Figure 9.5: Evidence that presence or absence of the ventral compartment is decisive as to whether distally complete transformations occur. Shown are the fate maps of distally complete (a) and incomplete (b) tarsal triplications. Each curved line indicates the structures present at the base of a particular triplication (after Bryant and Girton, 1980). Distally complete legs contain cells of the ventral (V) compartment (a) while distally incomplete legs do not (b). In agreement with the model, an anteroposterior boundary is present in both types of legs. 1-8: tarsal bristle rows. The concentric rings 1-5: the five tarsal segments; thick black bars: approximate location of the two major compartment borders according to Girton and Russel (1981).

Per se to a particular location.

In the abdomen, which consists of structures lacking a proximodistal dimension, no compartments have yet been found. (Lawrence et al., 1978). According to the proposed view, subdivision into compartments is a pre-condition for the generation of structures with a proximodistal axis, for instance of wings and legs. Therefore it is not required in the abdomen. It could well be, however, that temporary A-P subdivisions occur in the abdominal segments also during the formation of segments (see chapter 14).

**9.5 Evidence for a morphogen gradient and a stepwise unidirectional determination**

Distal fragments of a disk do not regenerate proximal structures (Schubiger, 1971; van der Meer and Ouweneel, 1974). Distal to proximal segmental respecification does not occur even if proximal and distal fragments are confronted (Haynie and Schubiger, 1979; Strub, 1979). This is in agreement with the proposed model since distal determination, once obtained, is assumed to be irreversible. (This is in sharp contrast to the distal-proximal regeneration within, for example, a leg segment (see Fig.13.1) and emphasizes once more that different mechanisms are involved in these two types of pattern formation).

Mutations are to be expected in which positional information is changed, but not the response of cells to it. Such mutations should not be cell autonomous. For instance, a small clone of mutant cells in a wildtype environment is expected to develop like the wild type cells since they are exposed to the normal positional information. Two known mutations are of this type. *Drosophila* flies carrying the mutation *wingless* can duplicate the dorsal thorax but fail to form a wing blade. However, clones of *wingless* cells can and do participate in wing formation (Morata and Lawrence, 1977). According to the model, either compartmental-
ization or production of the morphogen by the cooperation of compartments may be affected. This mutant further suggests that the system which generates positional information for the wing is different from that of the leg since formation of the leg is not affected.

Jürgens and Gateff (1979) have found duplication of legs in a temperature-sensitive mutant \((\text{mad})\) of \(\text{Drosophila}\). The orientation of the additional legs indicates that in this mutant a second dorsal compartment is formed at the ventral side of the disk while the anteroposterior axis is not affected. Mosaic studies have revealed that both mutant and wild type cells participate in the formation of the duplicated leg. This implies that the positional information and not the response to an unaltered gradient is what is changed. Distally complete duplications can be induced by a pulse of high temperature, applied between 48h and 76h after egg deposition. As the rule, the later the pulse, the more proximal the point of bifurcation. In terms of the model, the disk is larger (or subdivided into more cells) at a later stage and the intersections can, therefore, have a greater distance from each other. This leads to less overlap between the two systems of positional information and therefore to a more complete separation of the two legs.

Distally incomplete structures can occur in triplication of legs (mentioned above) as well as in cockroach legs after an injury (see Fig.9.9). Since only the local concentration of the morphogen is interpreted, distally incomplete structures are expected if the normal maximum concentration is not reached. This can be caused by restricted collaboration of the compartments, e.g. if too few cells of a particular compartmental specification are available or if they are not in close enough proximity. The missing ventral compartment in distally incomplete leg triplication (Fig.9.4, 9.5) supports directly this view.

### 9.6 Expected mutations

The model predicts mutations in which proximodistal pattern formation is affected. The resulting pattern may be distally incomplete. In extreme cases, the whole disk may be missing. As mentioned, a mutation in which the generation of the signal (morphogen synthesis) but not the local response of the cells is affected would not be cell autonomous. That means, a clone of mutated cells in a wildtype environment will participate in normal pattern formation. However, if such a clone arises close to the intersection of compartments, the prediction is that pattern formation in the whole disk is altered in that only distally incomplete structures are formed, even by the wildtype cells. Further, the model predicts that several mutations exist with the same phenotype but that each mutation is specific for a particular compartment since the mutation effects a compartment-specific function in the cooperation. For instance, a clone has to arise in the posterior compartment and close to the intersection if a pattern alteration is to occur. Such genetic studies combined with DNA sequencing methods may allow one to trace the regulatory pathway of the morphogen responsible for proximodistal determination. Distal transformation of posterior leg fragments
9.7. STRATEGY FOR ISOLATION OF THE MORPHOGEN

In a normal disk, the morphogen is produced presumably only in minute amounts rendering a biochemical characterization difficult. However, according to the model, a disaggregation and reaggregation of whole disks should lead to an tremendously increased morphogen production since then cells of all compartmental specifications become close to each other at many locations, not only at the natural intersection as in the intact disk. Comparison of electrophoretic patterns of normal and of reaggregated disk may reveal spots of changed intensity, pointing towards the morphogen. Some experimental evidence is already available that this strategy may be successful. Reaggregates of dissociated leg disks show distal transformation extreme frequently (Strub, 1977b).

9.8. APPLICATION TO PATTERN REGULATION IN INSECT LEGS

In hemimetabolous insects, the adult appendage emerges not in a unique metamorphosis from a disk but through a sequence of several moults. Between the moults, substantial pattern regulation is possible. The leg of cockroaches is a well-studied developmental system of these insects. Nothing is known about compartments in the cockroach leg, but as a working hypothesis we will assume an analogous compartmentalization as in Drosophila. The compartments would have a stripe-like shape along the tube-shaped ectoderm of the leg. Many features of pattern regulation can then be made understandable by the proposed cooperation of compartments.

The cockroach leg, if removed, is capable of complete regeneration. During closure of the wound, cells of all three compartments come into close contact and positional information is regenerated. All those cells which are exposed to a higher morphogen concentration than that corresponding to their own specifica-
CHAPTER 9. COOPERATION OF COMPARTMENTS

Figure 9.7: Occurrence and failure of intercalary regeneration in systems controlled by positional information. (a) An amputated cockroach leg regenerates all missing parts. (b) However, grafting a mid-tibia (TI) onto a mid-femur (FE) stump does not lead to intercalary regeneration. The parts between the dashed lines remain missing (Bohn, 1970a). Thus, regrafting distal structures suppresses the formation of intervening parts. (c) Incomplete wound healing after cutting and regrafting can lead to distal transformation on both sites of the wound. Then, two additional tarsi (TA) are formed (French, 1976a) analogous to the additional posterior structures in an Euscelis egg (Fig. 8.2e). (d-k) Explanation in terms of the model: It is assumed that the morphogen gradient (positional information) causes the determination of the structures 1 - 5. (e) During normal growth, the local morphogen concentration decreases in most of the cells; the gradient is assumed to be unaffected by growth. Since interpretation proceeds unidirectionally, the cells remain stable in their respective states of differentiation. (f) After removal of distal parts and reformation of the positional information, most cells are exposed to a higher morphogen concentration and all structures (g) are formed. (h) If an intermediate section of leg is removed, the positional information that could lead to respecification of the structures at the wound is present only in the very terminal structures of the leg. Therefore, in most of the cells the positional information is lower than the level they were exposed to when the pattern was first established. Whether missing parts are replaced therefore depends on the extent of growth and the range of the morphogen. In this example (i), part of structure 2 becomes respecified to form 3 while structure 4 remains missing since the cells exposed to the appropriate morphogen concentration are already determined to form structure 5. (j) Analogously, no repair of a gap introduced by grafting surplus structures occurs since the morphogen concentration remains too low at the location of the gap. (k) If, however, such an operation triggers a new system of positional information, as would happen if, for instance, cells of all major compartments have come close together, two new distal structures will be determined by respecification. This corresponds to the experimental observation shown in (c).

Figure 9.8: Formation of supernumerary limbs after contralateral grafting of a cockroach leg (Bohn, 1965). (a) The operation (b) resulting pattern after several moults. (c) Explanation in terms of the model. Two new areas of confrontation of all three major compartments are created at the graft-host junction (squares), leading to two new limb fields.
Figure 9.9: Cutting a notch into the inner ventral (V) site of a cockroach leg (a) leads to outgrowth of additional leg-like structures. This result is very surprising if one assumes that juxtaposition of non-adjacent structures leads to an intercalation of missing structures only. 
(b) The same operation at the outer dorsal site (D) heals without much additional outgrowth (Bohn, 1965). 
(c) Explanation based on “cooperation of compartments”. A subdivision similar to that of the leg of Drosophila into the anterior (A), posterior (P) and into the much smaller ventral (V) compartment is assumed. After removal of tissue at the ventral side, cells of anterior, posterior and ventral specifications become quite close to each other (d). Cooperation is possible and outgrowth of symmetrical distal structures is expected on the basis of the proposed model. Since anterior and posterior cells could be separated by some ventral cells, the cooperation may be restricted and distally incomplete structures can be formed. After a similar incision at the dorsal site, ventral cells remain far away and cooperation of compartments is impossible.

One strange result of these experiments is that, although a stump regenerates a complete leg, regrafting a leg fragment onto a cut stump can prevent regeneration of structures present neither in the stump nor in the leg fragment. If, for instance, a leg fragment consisting of a leg from mid tibia on is grafted onto a stump cut off in mid femur, the distal femur and proximal tibia will not be regenerated (Fig.9.7). As explained in detail in Fig.9.7, as growth occurs, positional information in most of the cells becomes lower than it was at the time of cell determination. After removal of an intermediate section of the leg, reprogramming is, as a rule, impossible. This failure of gap repair is typical for systems controlled by unidirectional interpretation of positional information, since the cells change their determination only when exposed to a higher morphogen concentration, not when confronted with an unnatural neighbour (see also Fig.8.3). If, however, in such a regraft operation, wound healing is not perfect, two additional distal structures are generated (Fig.9.7c). In terms of the model, as the ectodermal tube closes, cells of all compartments come into close contact and new centers of morphogen production are formed at both wound surfaces. This will lead to the reprogramming of the leg both proximal and distal to the wound such that symmetrical distal structures will be generated at the wound site (Fig.9.7k).

After amputating a limb and reimplanting it either in a rotated position or onto a contralateral stump, supernumerary legs are formed (Bart, 1971a,b; Bohn, 1972; French, 1976b). On the basis of his experiments, Bart (1971a)
has already proposed that new morphogenetic centers arise whenever different sides (anterior-posterior, dorsal-ventral) meet. Such an operation creates new intersections between compartments Fig.9.8). Their numbers and the handedness of the additional limbs will be discussed in detail for the amphibian limb system (see Fig.10.6). Cutting a V-shaped notch into the ventral (internal) side of a leg leads preferentially to outgrowth of a symmetrical leg which is distally more or less complete (Fig.9.9). This outgrowth is very striking if one expects only an intercalation between mismatching neighbors on the shortest possible route. A similar injury at the dorsal side heals with little, if any, outgrowth. Similarly, artificially produced double ventral legs regenerate to a large extent while double dorsal legs do not (Bohn, 1965). The model predicts this asymmetric behavior. The explanation is given in Fig.9.9.

In conclusion, very different and seemingly unrelated observations can be explicated under the assumption that the borders between compartments are used to create new coordinate systems for the finer subdivisions of the developing organism. A still hypothetical morphogenetic substance produced by the cooperation of compartments, provides positional information about the distance of the cells from the border(s). Changes of the geometrical arrangement of the compartments, caused either by surgical interference or by a cell-internal switch in the compartmental specification can lead to new intersections of borders and therefore to the formation of additional structures.
Chapter 10

Boundaries between differently determined cells control pattern formation in the limb of vertebrates

10.1 Polarising and competent zones in the amphibian limbs

Cooperation of compartments has been suggested above as a straightforward mechanism to organized subfields in insects. In vertebrates, one of the best investigated systems of pattern formation in a developmental subfield is the limb (for review see Hinchliffe and Johnson, 1980). Grafting experiments reveal that cooperation of differently determined tissues is also involved in limb organization. In amphibians, two zones are important for limb development: the competent zone and the more posteriorly located polarizing zone (Harrison, 1921; Slack, 1976; 1977a,b). The future limb is formed almost exclusively from the competent zone. However, these competent cells can only form a limb when juxtaposed with cells of the polarizing zone. Grafting polarizing tissue anterior to the future limb area leads to the outgrowth of symmetrical limbs in which the posterior digits are duplicated (P-A-P-pattern, Fig.10.1). In some cases, two almost complete hands are formed while in others, some anterior digits are missing. From these experiments, Slack concluded that an interaction between the two zones is required to generate the positional information that controls anterior-posterior determination of the future limb. By implanting polarizing tissue from a salamander into an axolotl Slack (1976) has provided direct evidence that only the competent tissue responds: The reduplicated leg consists entirely of axolotl type structures. After grafting tissue of the prospective limb area into a more posterior region of the flank, an additional limb with reversed polarity can result (Fig.10.2). In terms of Slacks model, after such grafting, competent tissue is - in contrast to its normal position - located posterior to the polarizing zone leading to a reversed
CHAPTER 10. VERTEBRATE LIMBS

Figure 10.1: Juxtaposition of two zones is necessary for the anteroposterior (A-P) organization of a limb. (a-c) Graft experiment by Slack (1976) with axolotls. (a) Donor embryo and the location of the polarizing (xx) and competent zone (==) as determined by this and by the experiment described in Fig. 10.2. (b) Host embryo after implantation of the polarizing tissue anterior to the competent zone. (c) The resulting symmetrical (right) limb. The posterior digits are always present and duplicated while some anterior digits may be missing. (d,e) Bones of symmetrical limbs and of a normal limb (f) (after Slack, 1977a,b). (g,h) Model: In the normal situation, confrontation of polarizing and competent tissue leads to a symmetrical morphogen distribution, centered over the common boundary. Only the competent cells can respond and this leads to a monotonic gradient (solid line). After a graft as shown in (a,b) the competent zone is confronted with polarizing tissue both at its anterior and posterior margins, leading to a symmetrical morphogen distribution (h) and therefore to a symmetrical arrangement of skeletal elements. Depending on the overlap of the two gradients, low concentrations and therefore anterior digits could be absent.

gradient and therefore to a reversed limb. It is easy to see how the two zones - the prerequisites for the limb formation - might be formed during development. Interpretation of a primary anteroposterior gradient in the embryo could lead to several belt-shaped patches of differently determined tissues. Two of these could be the polarizing and the competent zones.

Independent of the question of how a limb field is formed, these experiments provide an important indication concerning the origin of polarity in tissues of higher organisms. Harrison (1921) believed that overall polarity results from the superposition of many small polar structures e.g. polar cells. In an experiments such as shown in Fig.10.2 the graft is only transposed, not rotated; the A-P orientation of the graft remains unchanged. Thus, the experimentally observed change in the polarity of the outgrowing limb was regarded as very striking. In fact, the experiment provides strong evidence that polarity does not result from many small polar substructures but from the slope of graded distributions of morphogenetic substances.
10.2 Generation of polar structures by cooperative interaction between two differently determined patches of cells

The need for cooperation between the two zones is reminiscent of the mechanism proposed above for pattern formation in imaginal disks. However, a major difference remains. The vertebrate limb is a structure with clear anteroposterior polarity while the fatemap of the leg disk of Drosophila shows that the elements are circularly arranged (see Fig. 9.2). As has been shown above, cooperation of two zones leads to a symmetrical morphogen distribution, centered over the common boundary. Therefore each zone contains one of the two slopes of the morphogen ridge. If only one of the two zones is able to respond, the cells of this zone are exposed to an exponential gradient. The end result is a polar instead of a symmetric structure (Fig. 10.1).

10.3 Two intersecting boundaries are required to determine a limb field

The common border of the polarizing and competent zone would have a long extension in the dorsoventral direction. The morphogen distribution in the competent cells resulting from the cooperative interaction is high along the whole posterior boundary of the competent zone and low at its anterior side. This morphogen distribution is therefore only able to organize the anteroposterior axis of the limb. The dorsoventral position of the outgrowing limb remains to be deter-
Figure 10.3: Steps in the formation of the limb field. (a) A primary anteroposterior gradient can serve to subdivide an embryo into bands of distinct determinations (see Fig. 11.5 or 14.5). Among these are the polarizing (posterior, P, crossed) and the competent (anterior, A, blanc) zones. (b) To locate the position of the outgrowing limb a global dorsoventral subdivision of the embryo is required. This leads to the D (==) and V (blanc) stripes. The area around the intersection (o) of the A-P and D-V border (framed in a and b; c) defines the position of the limb field. Cooperation of the A and P and the D and V tissues leads to a symmetrical AP and DV-morphogen distribution. Since only the competent cells respond, the anteroposterior pattern is polar (see Fig. 10.1). The positional information generated in this way (indicated by the triangle) is a measure for the distance of a cell from the borders. The dotted line marks the expected position of the apical ectodermal ridge (AER) on the D-V border in A (competent) tissue. (d) Geometry of the A-P and D-V-stripes in an outgrowing right limb bud, viewed from a posterior-dorsal position.

In imaginal disks, this can be achieved by an intersection with a second boundary (Fig. 10.3) which results from a pattern-forming event organizing the dorsoventral axis (see p. ). This intersection of two borders completely defines the limb field. The intersection itself determines the position of outgrowth of the proximodistal axis. The distance from the competent-polarizing border determines anteroposterior position. The dorsoventral (D-V) pattern is more or less symmetrical. It is to be expected that both slopes of the resulting symmetrical D-V morphogen distribution are used but that they are differently interpreted in the dorsal and ventral parts. Since the intersections depend on the primary organization of the embryo, not only is positional information within the limb field generated but the limb field necessarily has correct orientation with respect to the body axis and correct handedness. (Pattern formation in the proximodistal axis will be dealt with in detail later on p. 115; see Fig. 11.8). A mechanism of interpretation of the A-P gradient leading to superposition of sequential and a periodic structure as indicated by the sequence of digits, will be discussed in chapter 14.)

### 10.4 Regeneration and formation of new limb fields after experimental manipulations

It is not yet possible to test such a model at the biochemical level. Support is provided by the demonstration that the model correctly predicts the altered pattern resulting from certain experimental interferences.

Some amphibians regenerate amputated distal parts of a limb or form super-
10.5. REGENERATION OF SYMMETRICAL LIMBS

Figure 10.4: Regeneration of double posterior (PP) and failure of regeneration of double anterior forelimbs. (a,b) Surgical production of symmetrical PP and AA limbs by reciprocal exchange of anterior and posterior halves of the forelimbs of Axolotl with subsequent removal of the distal parts (b). (c) Result: Symmetrical limb regenerated by a PP stump. The most anterior digit 1 is missing, 2-4 are duplicated (after Holder et al., 1980). An AA stump shows little or no regeneration. (d-f) Wound closure in a normal, in a PP- or in an AA-leg leads to one (d), two (e) or no (f) intersections (circles) of the two borders. Either a normal, a PP leg (as in c) or no leg is expected to regenerate. The triangles indicate schematically the A-P and D-V morphogen profiles, the dots indicate the position of the AER.

numery limbs after other experimental interferences. According to the model, a new limb field is formed if experimental interference leads to a new intersection of the two boundaries. Under this assumption, regeneration of a limb indicates that the limb does not consist entirely of competent tissue but that at least a small stripe of polarizing tissue is carried along with the outgrowing limb. After truncation of a limb and closure of the wound, a new intersection can be formed, which enables reformation of the limb’s removed parts.

10.5 Presence and absence of regeneration of experimentally produced symmetrical limbs

A critical test of any model for limb development is whether it can account for the very striking differences in the regeneration capability of different types of symmetrical limbs. A symmetrical limb consisting of two posterior halves (PP-limb) regenerates a PP leg (Slack and Savage, 1978a,b). In contrast, a limb consisting of two anterior halves (AA) shows little, if any, regeneration (Stocum, 1978). These results are easy to understand in light of the proposed mechanism. Clearly, a PP-limb has two strips of polarizing tissue, one on each site (Fig.10.1; 10.4). This leads to two intersections of all boundaries and hence to a symmetrical P-A-P pattern with some of the most anterior structures missing. After removal of distal parts of such a P-P-leg, two intersections of the two boundaries are re-
CHAPTER 10. VERTEBRATE LIMBS

Figure 10.5: Examples of supernumerary limbs formed after 180° rotation or contralateral grafting of a limb blastema in *Rana temporaria* (Maden, 1981a). (a) Result after a 180° rotation: A symmetrical (PP) limb is formed in addition to the graft (G). (b) 180° Two supernumeraries (S) with normal anteroposterior polarity are formed in addition to the graft (G). (c) Contralateral graft with D-V inversion: Two “normal” supernumeraries. Photographs kindly provided by Malcom Maden.

formed and therefore the original symmetrical P-A-P pattern is re-established. The formation of the second posterior side is, if the two intersections are sufficiently separated, connected with the formation of a second parallel aligned proximodistal axis. This shows the interdependence of the two axes.

The failure of experimentally produced double anterior (AA) half limbs to regenerate is also described correctly by the cooperation model. An AA limb contains no P strip on either side (Fig.10.4). Only a D-V border is present which is neither sufficient to trigger a proximodistal outgrowth nor an A-P organisation.

The different behavior of AA and PP limbs results from the asymmetry of the leg, which contains mainly competent (A) and only a small stripe of polarizing (P) tissue although both tissue types have to be present if distal outgrowth is to occur. Other observations on the regeneration of AA or PP legs are less well understood. The frequency of regeneration depends critically on the time between the surgical production of a symmetrical limb and the removal of its distal part (which eventually induces regeneration). The shorter this time, the higher the frequency of regeneration (Stocum, 1978; Tank and Holder, 1978; Bryant and Baca, 1978). In contrast to upper arm AA-stumps, lower arm or leg AA-stumps regenerate almost as well as PP-stumps (Stocum, 1978; Krasner and Bryant, 1980).

### 10.6 Formation of supernumerary limbs after rotation or contralateral grafting experiments

It has been known for many years (Bryant and Iten, 1976) that cutting an amphibian limb and regrafting it after 180° rotation can lead to outgrowth of supernumerary limbs. The same happens after grafting a limb tip onto a contralateral
10.6. SUPERNUMERARY LIMBS

Figure 10.6: Explanation of supernumerary limb formation. (a) After 180° rotation, A and P as well as D and V tissue become juxtaposed at the host-graft junction. (b,c) To visualize the arrangement of tissue with A (blank), P (xxxx), D (—) and V (blank) specificity, the leg cylinder (see Fig 10.3d) has been unrolled. Cells at the right and left margin of the figure are, in reality, neighbors. Condition for a limb field is a DV border in an A-area (dashed/blanc border), flanked by posterior (crossed) tissue. As in Fig 10.3, a limb field is indicated by circles, triangles and dots. (b) In a non-operated limb, the A, P, V and D specificities are arranged in stripes, oriented proximodistally. No intersections occur. (c) Arrangement after 180° rotation of the graft (top): 6 intersections occur, two can lead to normal limbs (triangles). The other 4 can lead to symmetrical double posterior (PP) legs, indicated by the M-shaped morphogen distribution. (d-f) Contralateral grafts leads either to a DV (d, e) or an AP-inversion (f). After both types of contralateral transplantation only two normal intersections are formed (no PP-legs) and the supernumerary legs have the handedness of the stump (arrows).

stump. In Fig.10.5, examples of the observed results are shown. It is difficult to imagine offhand which and how many intersections are formed by a particular operation. In Fig.10.6, the leg cylinder has been unrolled and the location of the borders at the graft-host junctions are shown. It can be seen that in all these operations, at least two new intersections of the two borders are created, enabling formation of two supernumerary limbs. Fig.10.6 shows further that the model predicts a very striking difference between a 180° rotation and a contralateral graft of a limb tip. After 180° rotations, very complex intersections occur which depend on the precise alignment between host and graft. Especially, only after 180° rotation formation of symmetrical (PP) limbs is possible. Such complex supernumeraries have been observed by Maden (1980, 1981a,b). Fig.10.5a shows an example. The symmetrical PP-limb can be recognized easily by its bifurcated central digit. The situation is very different after transplantation of a limb blastema to the contralateral side. Depending on the graft, either the A-P or the D-V axis is inverted. According to the model, this leads to two normal but never to PP-type intersections (Fig.10.6). These predictions are fully supported by Maden’s experimental observation. The model leads to an even more precise
prediction: An A-P confrontation should lead to one supernumerary limb derived from the host, the other from the graft. In contrast, after a D-V confrontation, host and stump tissue should contribute to each supernumerary limb. Either the dorsal side is derived from the host and the ventral site from the graft or vice versa (Fig.10.6d,c). Whether this prediction is true has to wait for further experimental investigations.

The experiments of Maden (1981a) show further a substantial variability in the frequency of supernumerary outgrowth between different amphibian species. Even if the same operation is made repetitively on the same species, the resulting pattern cannot be predicted with certainty. Only a probability for the formation of one or two supernumeraries can be given. The intersection of the boundaries appears therefore to be a prerequisite for a distal outgrowth but other factors such as blood supply or innervations must be involved in the decision whether it occurs or not.

10.7 Pattern formation in the chicken limb bud

Many experimental data are available concerning the developmental control of the chicken limb bud, revealing both differences and similarities to that of the amphibian limb. The most obvious difference is that after truncation, an amphibian limb regenerates while a chicken wing bud does not, unless an apical ectodermal ridge (AER) is transplanted onto the stump. The AER is a thickening of the ectoderm on the wing bud oriented parallel to the anteroposterior axis of the embryo.

A second area important for the pattern formation in the bud is the “zone of polarizing activity” (ZPA), discovered by Gasseling and Saunders (1964). The ZPA is a nest of mesodermal cells located at the posterior margin of the bud. It does not contribute to the limb proper but instead it develops as the "posterior necrotic zone". Upon transplantation into a more anterior position, the ZPA can induce a symmetrical anteroposterior pattern and a second proximodistal axis. The grafted ZPA establishes the posterior side of the additional limb structures analogously to the situation observed after transplantation of polarizing tissue in amphibians (Fig.10.1; 10.2). On the basis of its location and orientation, it is tempting to identify the AER with the D-V boundary as discussed above. This view is supported by the observation that in dissociation-reaggregation experiments, the ectodermal hull determines the dorsoventral axis of the leg (MacCabe et al., 1973, 1974). However, transplantation of early limb bud mesoderm under an ectopic ectoderm can induce an AER in the ectoderm (Kieny, 1960), showing that the primary DV organization also takes place in the mesoderm. The ZPA, controlling the anteroposterior axis, is, as mentioned, of mesodermal origin. The ZPA is only effective when transplanted close to an AER (Wolpert et al., 1975). Therefore, similarly as the situation in amphibians, an intersection of an AP border (the ZPA in the mesoderm) and a DV border (the AER in the ectoderm) seems to be required for generation of a limb field. AER and ZPA appear to be specialized tissues which can be formed only during an early em-
Figure 10.7: Determination of the anteroposterior pattern in the chicken wing. (a) The chicken embryo with the wing bud between somite 16 and 19. (b) A wing bud at stage 23 (drawn after Hinchliffe and Johnson, 1980) showing the Apical Ectodermal Ridge (AER). (c) Normal pattern of a wing. (d-h) ZPA-graft experiments (based on Wolpert and Hornbruch, 1981; Tickle et al., 1975; Summerbell, 1974a): the operations (top), the result (center) and the explanation on the basis of a gradient model. (d) Graft of a ZPA to the anterior side leads to symmetrical development. The ZPA is assumed to be the source of the morphogen. (e) Implantation of the ZPA into the center can lead to a complete limb pattern in the anterior part and an incomplete symmetrical pattern in the posterior part. (f) Two ZPA’s grafted into the center and into an anterior position can lead to the digit pattern 434 in the anterior part. This result argues strongly against an intercalation of structures since the anterior digit 2 is not formed. (g) For the action of the ZPA, close contact with the AER is required. After removal of the anterior part of the AER, implantation of a ZPA does not change the pattern. (h) Graft of a ZPA outside the proper limb field (opposite somite 15). Most of the cells exposed to the high morphogen concentration are incompetent, only digit 2 is duplicated, indicating that pattern formation depends on a long range signal and not on a chain of inductions between neighboring cells.

Wolpert and coworkers (Tickle et al., 1975; Wolpert et al., 1975; Summerbell, 1979) have shown that the pattern formed after ZPA transplantation can be explained under the assumption that the implanted ZPA acts as a local morphogen source (Fig.10.7). Implantation of a ZPA for a limited period of time indicates that the response of the cell is completely analogous to that deduced from the insect experiments (see Fig.8.7). The cells are “promoted” stepwise and unidirectionally towards a more posterior determination until the actual determination corresponds to the local morphogen concentration. After removal of the morphogen source (ZPA) the cells remain stable in state of determination they have achieved. This mode of interpretation resolves a long lasting controversy (Saunders, 1977) about whether the ZPA is involved at all in normal pattern formation. It has been found experimentally that the ZPA can be removed relatively early without preventing normal development (Fallon and Crosby, 1975).
The ZPA appears to be superfluous. But at the same time, the ZPA can induce additional structures as mentioned above. In terms of the model, the unidirectional interpretation of the anteroposterior gradient is completed relatively early. After removal of the source, the cells remain stable in the once achieved state of determination. Nevertheless, after implantation into a more anterior position, the increased morphogen concentration is able to reprogram the cells from their more anterior to a more posterior determination state. After very early excision of the ZPA, it is expected that the new juxtaposition of P and A tissues leads to regeneration of the ZPA and therefore also to normal development. Therefore, normal development can follow after ZPA removal in any case.

Tickle (1981) determined how many ZPA cells are required to induce additional digits. About 35 cells are sufficient to induce an additional digit 2 (the most anterior one, demanding the lowest morphogen concentration) and 100 cells can induce the complete sequence. These numbers are surprisingly small. However, if cooperation is involved, it is expected that only the marginal cells which are in contact with the AER contribute to morphogen production. If the number of cells is small, almost every cell has contact and contributes. Another important piece of information can be deduced from this result. Induction of the anteroposterior axis in the vertebrate limb is not a self-amplifying process infecting surrounding cells. It is not characterized by a clear threshold and an all-or-nothing result as observed in determination of the anteroposterior axis of an insect embryo (see Fig.8.1 and 8.4) or in the induction of new heads in hydra (Fig.6.2). For generation of the primary embryonic gradient, we have had to assume autocatalytic mechanisms. In contrast, if the morphogen gradient were generated by cooperation of cells a graded (not a switch-like) quantitative relationship between number of cooperating cells and morphogenetic level would be expected. This suggests a strategy for isolation of the morphogen. Creating a close contact between many AER and ZPA cells, for instance, by disaggregation and common tissue culture, should increase the morphogen production dramatically.

### 10.8 Relation to the polar coordinate model

The proposed mechanism provides a molecular basis for the complete circle rule proposed by French, Bryant and Bryant (1976, see p. ). They stipulated that distal outgrowth occurs whenever a complete set of 12 circumferential positional values are close to each other. Their choice of 12 values was somewhat arbitrary. According to a revised version (Bryant, French and Bryant, 1981) distalization occurs locally whenever the positional values are complete in a particular area of the circumference. If three or four values had been stipulated instead, the two models would have similarities, since demanding a complete set of four quadrants is equivalent to requiring an intersection of two borders. Both models therefore make the same predictions about the handedness of supernumerary limbs since handedness is independent of whether 3,4 or 12 positional values are assumed. And both models predict that, after a contralateral graft, both supernumeraries should be of the stump handedness. Despite these similarities, the models make
different predictions. According to the model presented above, the morphogen gradients are set up and distal outgrowth occurs whenever an intersection between an A-P and D-V border is present. In contrast to the assumption of the complete circle rule, distal outgrowth is expected to be independent of the limb’s fine structure which results from the interpretation of these gradients. The experiment mentioned above in which polarizing tissue is grafted into a more anterior position (Fig.10.1) should illustrate the different predictions. According to the proposed cooperation model, two intersections of all borders appear close to each other. This leads to two parallel outgrowing proximodistal axes and a symmetrical P-A-P pattern. In agreement with the experimental observation, outgrowth is expected despite the fact that some of the most anterior structures are missing due to overlap of the two resulting morphogen distributions. In contrast, the complete circle rule would predict that missing anterior structures would lead to an incomplete proximodistal outgrowth at best. For ipsilateral 180° rotation the proposed model predicts the observed complex supernumeraries, which was unexpected on the basis of the polar coordinate model. Further, the model presented links the regulatory properties of developing appendages with primary pattern formation while, on the polar coordinate model, it remains an open question as to how the circumferential positional values are generated in the first place, how the handedness of a limb is determined and how a limb obtains its correct position and orientation with respect to the body axes. Nevertheless, the model of French, Bryant and Bryant served to stimulate focused experimentation which contributed substantially to our present knowledge. It has narrowed the range of possible molecular mechanisms since most of the model’s predictions have proved to be correct and it helped in developing the model discussed above.

10.9 Boundaries in other types of embryonal induction

The creation of a new coordinate system by “cooperation of compartments” is presumably not restricted to appendages. For instance, the diencephalon, the central structure of the forebrain, organizes the adjacent optic tectum (Chung and Cooke, 1975). Normally, the diencephalon is located anteriorly to the tectum. Operations in which diencephalic tissue becomes located at a posterior position lead to a polarity reversal of the tectum as visualized by a reversal of the retinotectal connections. This result is completely analogous to the polarity reversal of limbs after grafting of competent and polarizing tissue (Fig.10.1, 10.2).

Recent rotation experiments with the eye primordium of *Xenopus* have revealed that the eye has a stable anteroposterior polarity even at the earliest state in which the rudiment can be detected (Gaze et al., 1979). The eye results from an inductive interaction between an outgrowing part of the forebrain and the ectoderm. Extending the model developed above, the position of the outgrowth is presumably determined by a hidden boundary (as is the case with insect legs). The determination of “anterior” and “posterior” precedes that of the eye itself. Therefore, a non-polarized eye cannot exist just like an imaginal disk cannot be formed without a preceding subdivision into compartments.
The same mechanism - cooperation of “compartments” - is used in so distantly related organisms such as insects and vertebrates to organize the substructures. It is, therefore, a very general mechanism. It assures that the newly formed structures have the correct position and orientation in relation to the parts already existent in the developing embryo.
Chapter 11

The activation and maintenance of determined states

The geometry of a morphogenetic field is quite restricted if pattern formation mechanisms are involved which depend critically on diffusion. Since the time required for communication amongst all the cells of a field increases quadratically with the mean dimension of the field, pattern formation must take place within small assemblies of cells. As has been pointed out by Wolpert (1969, 1971), embryonic fields are indeed small, of the order of 1 mm or 100 cells across, a size in which communication via diffusion can take place in a few hours. As this initially small field grows to attain its final size, it becomes necessary that either the pattern forming mechanism or the response of the cells is turned off. Otherwise, as the field of cells enlarges, periodic prepatterns may emerge, which would destroy the normal relationship between body parts. By the instructions a cell obtains during its early developmental history the cell becomes determined for a particular developmental pathway. Determination would be a long-term memory for the developmental signals to which the cell was exposed. This memory should be maintained even when the cells come into contact with cells of different determination, for instance, due to folding of cell sheets or due to migration of individual cells (such as neural crest cells) through the organism.

11.1 Biochemical switches

The maintenance of a particular determined state is a dynamic process. For instance, imaginal disk cells can maintain their state of determination over many generations in tissue culture. However, transdetermination - abrupt changes in determination - can occur (Hadorn, 1967; Gehring and Nöthiger, 1973), indicating that determination involves stabilization of a particular state and suppression of alternative pathways. A particular determined state is presumably characterized by activation of a characteristic set of genes. Such a state can be maintained by feedback of the activated genes upon their own activity. This would occur if a gene is transcribed in the nucleus, the associated mRNA is then transported into the cytoplasm and directs there the synthesis of a protein which activates the further
transcription of that gene. Non-linear feedback-loops enable the formation of two or more stable states which can be selected by external signals and in which the cell would remain even after a removal of these signals.

The following simple reaction has two stable states (Meinhardt, 1976; Lewis, Slack and Wolpert, 1977)

\[
\frac{dg}{dt} = \frac{g^2}{1 + fg^2} - eg + m
\]  

The substance \(g\) has a non-linear, saturating feedback on its own production and a normal first-order decay. At low \(g\) concentration, the negative linear decay term dominates, \(dg/dt\) is negative, and the \(g\) concentration decreases further (Fig.11.1). At higher \(g\) concentration, the quadratic production term becomes important and the concentration increases until saturation is reached. A well-defined threshold exists and only two stable states are possible (Fig.11.1).

An externally supplied morphogen, \(m\), can cause a transition from one such stable state to the other. If \(m\) contributes to the production of \(g\), the \(g\) concentration can be pushed above the threshold and the cells made to switch irreversibly to the state of high \(g\) concentration. Even a shallow gradient of the morphogen distribution can cause an unequivocal separation of an area into distinct sub-areas with cells of high and low \(g\) concentration, respectively (Fig.11.1b). Alternatively, developmental decisions could be characterized by a restriction of possible pathways, involving the switching off of sets of genes rather than the activation of additional genes. This is possible if the morphogen interferes with the feedback, bringing the \(g\)-concentration temporarily below the threshold. In both cases, the cells would remain in the new state even after withdrawal of the morphogen.
11.2 Alternative states

Determination can also consist of the selection of alternative pathways (in contrast to the possible activation of one feedback loop). For instance, either gene 1 or gene 2 becomes activated but the cell must decide between these alternatives since both gene activities are mutually exclusive within one cell. A simple interaction with such a switching behavior is described by the following equations.

\[
\frac{dg_1}{dt} = \frac{1}{a + g_2^2} - g_1 \quad (11.2a)
\]

\[
\frac{dg_2}{dt} = \frac{1}{b + g_1^2} - g_2 \quad (11.2b)
\]

(production and decay rates have been set arbitrarily to unity, \( a \) and \( b \) are introduced to give a Michaelis-Menten kinetics). It is easy to see that the switching behavior of Eq.11.2 has a similar formal basis as that of Eq.11.1. Calculating the steady state of \( g_2 \) (\( \frac{dg_2}{dt} = 0 \)) and neglecting \( b \), we find \( g_2 = 1/g_1^2 \). Inserting this into Eq.11.2a leads to

\[
\frac{dg_1}{dt} = \frac{g_1^2}{1 + f g_1^2} - e g_1 + m
\]

which is identical with Eq.11.1.

A biological system in which the selection of two alternative pathways depends on the mutual repression of two genes is the \( \lambda \)-phage. The DNA of the phage can either be integrated into the \textit{E. coli} chromosome and replicate accordingly (lysogenic mode) or can replicate independently and thereby eventually kill the host cell (lytic mode). A simplified reaction scheme is given in Fig.11.2. This reaction has an even higher non-linearity than given in Eq.11.2, since both repressing substances are active as dimers and, in addition, the \( \lambda \)-repressor has an autocatalytic feedback on its own mRNA transcription (Ptashne et al., 1980).

Figure 11.2: Schematic drawing of the control system of the \( \lambda \)-phage (Ptashne et al., 1980). Transcription of the \( \lambda \)-repressor gene leads to the repression of the CRO-gene and vice versa. Only two stable states are possible, the lytic (CRO on, \( \lambda \) off) or the lysogenic (\( \lambda \) on, CRO off).
CHAPTER 11. CELL DETERMINATION

Figure 11.3: Alternative stable states. Determination requires that a cell can remain stable in one of several alternative states. (a) A molecular interaction on the level of the genes which can accomplish this. Each of the alternative genes \( i (i = 1, 2, ... ) \) feeds back on their own activation via a gene activator \( g_i \); but competes with the others via the common repressor \( R \) (wavy line = repressor coding site). (b) Computer-simulation (Eq.11.3). Only one of the feedback loops (gene 1, 2...) is stable within a given cell. Artificial activation of another loop will either decay or win the competition, suppressing the previously active gene.

11.3 Similarities between pattern formation and the selective activation of genes

For many developmental decisions, presumably more than two alternatives must to be envisaged. How can one stabilize one out of, let us say, ten genes and suppress all the others? The selective activation of genes has many formal similarities with the formation of a pattern. In pattern formation, only a few cells (those in a given region) become activated, the others are inhibited. Similarly during determination, only a few particular genes become activated, the others are repressed. Determination is, so to speak, pattern formation in gene space and it is tempting to assume formally similar mechanisms.

An interaction analogous to the Eq.3.1 for pattern formation is given in Eq.11.3.

\[
\frac{dg_i}{dt} = \frac{c_i g_i^2}{r} - \alpha g_i \quad (11.3a)
\]

\[
\frac{dr}{dt} = \sum_i c_i g_i^2 - \beta r \quad (11.3b)
\]

Each gene \( i (i = 1, 2...n) \) of the set receives feedback from its own activity via a gene activator \( g_i \) (Fig. 11.3a). This has the consequence that a gene, once activated, remains activated. An antagonistic reaction is required in addition, otherwise every gene would be activated. This can be brought about by a repressor, \( r \), which is produced by every active gene and which acts upon every gene belonging to the set of alternative genes (Fig.11.3b). We have seen that differing diffusion rates play an important role in pattern formation. The corresponding parameter in the selective activation of genes is the specificity of the activating and inhibiting molecules. The low diffusion rate of the activator molecules corresponds to a weak cross-reaction of the different \( g_i \) molecules with
11.3. PATTERN FORMATION AND GENE ACTIVATION

Figure 11.4: An analogy for the interpretation of positional information. The differently determined stable states which a cell can occupy are compared with the different levels on which a wooden block can rest on a staircase. Only few alternatives are possible. The local morphogen concentration corresponds to a flood, lifting up the block. After the flood has gone, the level at which the block comes to rest is a measure of the height of the flood. The lifting up is essentially irreversible. A second, higher flood can lift the block to higher levels while its withdrawal is without effect. The flood analogy can be used to underline the differences between two expressions frequently used in this context and give them a clear definition: positional information and positional values. Positional information denotes the level of the external signal, the height of the flood. In contrast, the positional value would describe the result of the interpretation, the status of the system, the level the block has attained. The two parameters have different properties. Positional information requires cell communication. The isolation of a small group of cells from the surrounding tissue will lead, as the rule, to a change in the positional information while the positional value is a stable property of the state of determination and would remain unchanged after withdrawal of the positional information.

one another. The autocatalysis is either position-specific as in pattern formation or gene-specific as in gene activation. In contrast, the inhibitor acts due to its redistribution by diffusion, upon every cell of a field. Correspondingly, the repressor has to act upon every gene belonging to the set of alternative genes. In such a system, two active genes of the same set within one cell would create an unstable situation. Each would compete with the other via the common repressor (Fig.11.3b): the dominating gene attains a stable equilibrium with the repressor. A decrease of a \( g_i \) concentration, for instance, would lead to an overproportional reduction in the \( r \) concentration, enabling a readjustment. Instead of utilizing a repressor, the mutual exclusion of the (autocatalytic) genes can also be obtained by competition for a common precursor molecule, in analogy to the pattern formation equation 5.1.

Taken together, the simple reactions described in Eqs.11.3 have two essential properties: a gene, once activated, remains active; and activation of different genes is mutually exclusive; only one of the several alternative genes can be active within one cell. The formalism developed is general and can be applied to many self-stabilizing systems. The activation of particular genes is only one of the more straightforward interpretations. The major question that remains is how a system chooses the correct state from several alternatives. As mentioned, experimental evidence suggests that there are two possibilities: either mutual induction of such locally exclusive states (see chapter 13), or control by a morphogen gradient (see below).
11.4 Interpretation of positional information

Evidence has been discussed that the local concentration of a substance, the morphogen, is used to select a particular developmental pathway. The graded distribution of the morphogen controls, therefore, the formation of an ordered sequence of structures. The question then is how this positional information is to be interpreted: how to convert the labile morphogen concentration, which would be sensitive to any change in the geometry of the developmental field, into a stable state of determination. A biochemical analogue-to-digital converter is required. There are several ways that the local concentration of a morphogen can serve to selectively activate genes. From ligation experiments with insect embryos, it has been deduced that the cells do not measure the local concentration all at once but rather that they are “promoted” step by step, switching from a more anterior (or proximal) to more posterior (distal) state until the state achieved corresponds to the local morphogen concentration (see Fig. 8.7). This narrows down the possibilities of interpreting positional information considerably. A straightforward mechanism consisting of the direct sequential activation of the genes until the activated state matches the local morphogen concentration will be described in this section. Another possibility, combining a sequential with a periodic mechanism to activate genes will be developed later (see chapter 14).

The set of alternative states of determination may be compared with the steps of a staircase; a particular state would correspond to a wooden barrel resting on a particular step. It will remain stable on each of the steps but no intermediate levels are possible. The interpretation of positional information would correspond to a positioning of the barrel on a particular step under the influence of an external signal. A possible mechanism, by analogy, is that the barrel can be lifted up by a flood and the level at which the barrel comes to a rest after the flood has diminished is a measure of the highest level of the flood (Fig. 11.4). In a system based upon a morphogen gradient the height of the flood is position-dependent and therefore, successively higher final stable states are attained at defined spatial intervals.

11.5 Molecular mechanisms enabling the controlled activation of particular genes

The selection of one particular state out of several alternative states requires competing feedback loops (Fig. 11.3). Genes and gene activators are the most obvious candidates for the required feedback-loops but it should be kept in mind that feedback can take place at other levels, e.g. in the control of translation or of RNA-processing and transport into the cytoplasm. In terms of genes, each gene $i (i = 1, 2, ... n)$ has to have an autocatalytic feedback on its own activity and must compete with the others to assure that only a particular gene of the set can be active in any particular cell. To make such a system useful for the interpretation of positional information we have to arrange that the particular gene which becomes
11.5. SPACE-DEPENDENT GENE ACTIVATION

Figure 11.5: Stages in interpretation of positional information. A set of feedback loops ("genes") is assumed which compete with each other via a common repressor (Eq. 11.4). A sufficient morphogen concentration ($m$, positional information) enables the activation of the next control gene. This transition is connected with an increase in the repressor concentration ($r$, positional value). Since the positional information provokes the transition, the positional value slows down the transition, the stepping through comes to a rest if the achieved determination corresponds to the local morphogen concentration. (a) Initially, gene 1 is active in every cell. The activity of control genes is indicated by the density of dots. (b) Intermediate and (c) final stable state. In groups of cells, the same control gene is active and an abrupt switch from one gene to the next takes place between neighboring cells. The pattern of gene activity would remain stable even after removal of the morphogen.

activated depends on the external signal, the local morphogen concentration. The following properties are required:

1. Each gene $i$ must have the tendency to activate the following gene in the sequence, $i + 1$. In other words, a particular gene activity is triggered by the activity of the gene preceding it in the sequence.

2. Transition to the next gene is possible only under the influence of the morphogen.

3. The process of stepping through a sequence of genes must stop when the gene which is activated corresponds to the local morphogen concentration. Each step must require a progressively higher morphogen concentration. At a particular state of determination, the local morphogen concentration becomes insufficient to induce a further step. This requires some sort of hierarchy, similar to the levels of the steps in the staircase analogy given above.

The general principle can be molecularly realized in different ways (Meinhardt, 1978a). The following extension of Eq. 11.3 (which describes the mutually exclusive activation of genes) should serve as an example. It allows a controlled activation of a particular gene under the influence of a morphogen:

\[
\frac{dg_i}{dt} = c_i g_i^2 - \alpha g_i^2 \quad \text{with} \quad g_i = g_i + \frac{\delta m}{r} g_{i-1} \quad (11.4a)
\]

\[
\frac{dr}{dt} = \sum_i c_i g_i^2 - \beta r \quad (11.4b)
\]

The first term describes the autocatalysis. A gene controlling a particular structure becomes slightly activated if the gene $i - 1$, the gene controlling the
CHAPTER 11. CELL DETERMINATION

Figure 11.6: Genealogical tree of determinations in systems controlled by positional information.
(a) Under the influence of the morphogen, the cell switches from one state of determination to the next (1,2,3,4,...) controlling, for instance, which type of segment is to be formed in an insect. This suggests a ladder-like decision tree. The cells belonging to a particular specification can be further subdivided by a second positional information system, controlling, for instance, which part of an insect leg is formed (a,b,c,...). (b) In contrast, a sequence of binary decisions, such as proposed by Kauffman et al. (1978). The sequence of decisions shown in (c) is formally equivalent to that shown in (a). Such a representation is used to characterize one type of cell lineages in Nematodes (Ehrenstein and Schierenberg, 1980; Kimble, 1981).

The cross-activation from the gene $i-1$ is enhanced by the morphogen $m$ and inhibited by the repressor $r$. The factor $c_i$ describes the efficiency of the feedback. Arbitrarily, we will assume a hierarchy $c_{i+1} > c_i$. It is a property of the reaction Eq.11.4 that in the steady state ($dg_i/dt = 0$) the concentration of the gene activator depends only on the decay rates ($g_i = \beta/\alpha$) while the repressor concentration depends on which gene is active ($r = c_i\beta/\alpha^2$). With the hierarchy chosen $c_{i+1} > c_i$, the repressor concentration increases with each transition to a higher gene. Since the repressor undermines the activation of the following control gene, a higher morphogen concentration is required, after each successful step for a further step. The stepping forward will come to rest at a particular control gene which is determined by the $m$-concentration. Fig.11.5 shows a simulation of Eq.11.4 for a linear array of cells. The positional information is a smoothly graded function of the position of the cells. Nevertheless, the cells respond in an unequivocal way. In groups of neighboring cells, the same gene is active and a switch from one gene to the next occurs without a zone of transition. Since the repressor concentration depends on which gene is active (Fig.11.5) it can be used as a stable indicator for the achieved state of determination of the cell, as positional value. A control gene once activated remains active in a homeostatic manner even after a decrease of the morphogen concentration. The cell has a long term memory with respect to the morphogen concentration to which it was once exposed. If, however, the morphogen concentration increases, the cells can switch to higher genes. In other words, if the positional information (morphogen concentration) is higher than the positional value (achieved state of determination, measured by the repressor concentration), the cells switch to higher states. If the positional
11.6 PROXIMO-DISTAL AXIS OF THE VERTEBRATE LIMB

Information becomes lower than the positional value, a cell remains stable in its present state. This interpretation of positional information is a strictly local process. Cell communication is required only for the generation of the positional information, not for the response. If cells not normally neighbors are juxtaposed, missing structures of the gap are not intercalated as long as no new positional information is generated. Gaps which are not repaired can occur between insect segments (Fig.8.3). The sequential switch from one state of determination to the next suggests a ladder-like sequence of decisions and not a series of binary decisions (Fig.11.6).

11.6 Positional information in systems with marginal growth - the proximo-distal axis of the vertebrate limb

Pattern formation by reaction-diffusion mechanisms can occur with or without growth. In discussing systems in which cell determination is controlled in a sequential fashion by threshold effects of the morphogen concentration, we have assumed that no substantial growth occurs before the interpretation of positional information is completed. This assumption seems valid for the insect egg, and the anteroposterior organization of the vertebrate limb. In contrast, the proximo-distal axis of the vertebrate limb becomes determined during a period of substantial growth. The elements are layed down in a proximo-distal sequence (Saunders, 1948, Summerbell et al., 1973, for review see Hinchliffe and Johnson, 1980). If cells are determined by a local morphogen concentration, a source of a morphogen at the tip of the limb as such would be insufficient to account for the sequential formation of new structures, because newly formed cells at the tip would be exposed to the same morphogen concentration as previously formed cells. One may question whether a positional information scheme is realized at all in such outgrowing systems and what type of interaction would eventually allow the accretion of new structures during outgrowth. We have shown that a possible mechanism for the sequential formation of structures consists in the increase of the maximum morphogen concentration during outgrowth (Meinhardt and Gierer, 1980). Such increase can be accomplished by feedback of the achieved determination onto the morphogen production. In addition to sequential determination, the model provides an explanation for regeneration, for presence and absence of intercalary regeneration, and for the instability to form the most distal structures, the digits, without all proximal structures being present.

The bud of a vertebrate limb consists of mesodermal cells in an ectodermal jacket with a thickening at the tip, the so-called apical ectodermal ridge (AER, see also Fig.10.7b). The AER is essential for limb outgrowth. Removal of the AER of the chicken wing bud leads to termination of further outgrowth. In this case only those structures which are already determined are formed. The later the AER is removed, the more distally complete the wing will be (Fig.11.7). At a very early stage, limb bud mesoderm from the chicken can induce an AER even in an
Figure 11.7: Evidence for the sequential determination of the proximodistal axis of a chick wing (Saunders, 1948; Summerbell et al., 1973; drawn after Summerbell, 1974b). (a,b) The operation: the apical ectodermal ridge (AER) is removed. (c-g) Resulting pattern after an AER removal at stages 19, 20, 20, 21, 25. The later the AER is removed, the more complete the leg will be distally. (h) Bones of a normal wing.

ectopic ectodermal cell layer (Kieny, 1960). Different models emphasize different aspects of limb development which should be part of an integrated explanation. The Saunders-Zwilling hypothesis (Saunders, 1969; Zwilling, 1961) stresses the mutual dependence of the limb bud mesoderm and the apical ectodermal ridge (AER). On the one hand, mesodermal cells are required to maintain the AER. The mesodermal cells presumably produce a substance required by the AER, the so-called apical ectodermal maintenance factor (AEMF). On the other hand, the AER induces the underlying mesodermal cells. To account for sequential specification along the proximo-distal axis, Summerbell et al. (1973) proposed that the cells in a so-called progress zone at the limb tip obtain, in the course of time, perhaps coupled to the cell divisions, a more and more distal determination. Cells leaving this labile zone are assumed to be fixed in their positional values. Faber (1976) proposed that a morphogen source is located at the tip but that the slope of the gradient close to the tip is so steep that it can be interpreted only after further outgrowth.

We have provided arguments to show that the limb field results from the cooperation of patches of differently determined cells (chapter 10). The AER marks presumably a boundary between “dorsal” and “ventral” cells (Fig.10.3). In attempting to integrate the different aspects - the role of the AER as well as the origin and effect of a progress-zone - let us assume that the AER is the source of a morphogen which controls the proximo-distal axis. It generates a morphogen gradient with the high point at the distal tip. At a very early stage of limb development, only very few structures are determined under the influence of this incipient gradient, let us say, structure 1 and 2. To achieve the increase of the morphogen concentration during outgrowth, we will assume a feedback of the achieved state of determination onto the source strength. The mesodermal cells are assumed to produce a substance - we will call it also AEMF - which controls morphogen production in the AER. Important is that a more distal structure produces more AEMF. With the addition of more state-2 cells at the growing tip, the AEMF concentration at the AER increases and therefore the
Figure 11.8: Accretion of new structures in an outgrowing field. With outgrowth, the morphogen concentration increases gradually, due to feedback of achieved determination onto morphogen production, leading to a sequential activation of new control genes (lower half in each subpicture). The morphogen (positional information ——) is produced only at the distalmost cell (the AER). The repressor concentration (steplike distribution) is a measure of the achieved determination and acts as the positional value. The diffusible AEMF (- - - - ), produced proportional to the repressor concentration controls the morphogen production at the source, the AER. The initial morphogen distribution is sufficient to determine structure 1 and 2 (a). Due to growth at the distal side, the number of state 2-cells increases. This leads to an increase of the average repressor concentration and, via AEMF, to an increase in morphogen concentration at the tip. After sufficient growth, a switch into the next determination state is possible (b). At the distal tip only, positional information may exceed the positional value. More distal positional values can be acquired only there (c). Outside of this “progress-zone”, in more proximal regions, positional information is always lower than the positional value and the cells remain stably in their once achieved state of determination. (d) A superposition of the distributions at different stages shows the increase in morphogen concentration at the outgrowing tip.

source strength of the AER increases too. If a certain number of state-2 cells are present, the morphogen production of the AER becomes sufficient to switch some underlying mesodermal cells at the tip from state 2 to the state 3. Since AEMF is diffusible, its concentration depends on the average of the cell states, and the switch to state 4 is possible only after a significant proliferation of state 3 cells has taken place. Only at a region close to the tip can positional information be higher than the achieved determination (Fig.11.8). The model describes the progress-zone correctly. Cells at the tip acquire progressively a more distal determination while cells leaving this zone are fixed in their determination. Fig.11.8 shows a simulation of the pattern formation during outgrowth, in which the repressor concentration has been used as a measure of the achieved determination (see Fig.11.5). The production of AEMF is assumed to be proportional to the repressor concentration while the production of the morphogen, taking place in the terminal cell only, is proportional to the AEMF. It is an inherent property of the assumed switching mechanism that determination of a cell can only be changed towards more distal determination and then only if the positional information is higher than the positional value.

11.7 Regeneration of structures of the proximo-distal axis of the vertebrate limb

The model describes not only sequential determination during outgrowth but also the regeneration of parts removed. After removal of the distal part of a limb
Figure 11.9: Presence and absence of intercalary regeneration in amphibian limbs. If a distal fragment is transplanted onto a proximal limb stump (a, operation 1), intervening structures are reformed. The regenerate is entirely host-derived (b) as indicated by the pigment of the host (drawn after Pescitelli and Stocum, 1980). In contrast, if a larger distal fragment transplanted to a stump at a distal position (a, operation 2) no intercalation at the mismatching graft-host junction can be detected (c, drawn after Stocum, 1975b). Explanation in terms of the model: Morphogen concentration etc. drawn as in Fig. 11.8. (d,e) After removal of intervening structures (d), the distal tip still allows relatively high morphogen production. Cells in the stump become exposed to higher morphogen concentration (arrow in e) and acquire a more distal determination. The gap can be repaired (f). In contrast, if the graft-host junction is more remote from the AER, (g) the morphogen concentration is lower (arrow) than achieved determination and no respecification can take place.

If a very distal tip (giving rise to the wrist and phalanges) of an amphibian limb bud is grafted on a proximal stump, the intervening structures can regenerate (Fig.11.9; Stocum, 1975a,b; Iten and Bryant, 1975). In more formal terms, if we denote the normal sequence of proximo-distal structures with 1,2...8, a gap of the type 123/67 will be repaired. In contrast, grafting a larger distal limb bud (3...7) onto another stump at a distal level (1...6) leads only to the structures expected from the fate map. In other words, the gap in the experimentally produced sequence 1...6/3...7 is not repaired (Fig.11.9; compare with a “real” intercalation, Fig.13.1). In both cases, the same structures (3 and 6) are juxtaposed. The difference in indicates that the decision whether intercalation takes place or not, is not a local process. Remarkably enough, in the first case (123/67), the new structures (45) are derived entirely from the stump. The cells of the stump are therefore
respecified towards a more distal determination. According to the model, the distal cells of the transplanted tip still allow relatively high morphogen production. The gradient extends from the AER into the stump region. The cells of the stump become exposed to a higher morphogen concentration in comparison with their own determination. In agreement with the unidirectional interpretation of positional information, they switch to higher (more distal) determination. Due to this, more AEMF is produced, and this leads to increased morphogen production and finally to repair of the gap. The respecification is caused by a high morphogen concentration and not by a juxtaposition of normally non-adjacent cells. The absence of intercalation in a sequence 1...6/3...7 strongly supports this view. According to the model, after this operation, the graft-host junction is too remote from the AER. The morphogen concentration is insufficient for any respecification (Fig.11.9c,g). The regeneration of intervening structures after implantation of a very distal limb bud fragment on a proximal stump and the absence of repair of a gap at a larger distance from an AER, provides the best evidence available that interpretation of positional information and not a mutual induction of neighboring structures is involved in the determination of the proximo-distal sequence. In chicken wings, regeneration of intervening structures is possible only in very young wing buds, up to stage 22 (Summerbell, 1977).

In terms of the model, whether internal deficiencies can be repaired depends on the range of the morphogen. If the range is small (low diffusion and/or short lifetime) the morphogen concentration declines rapidly with increasing distance from the AER (as shown in Fig.11.8). After removal of an intervening structure the morphogen concentration in the stump area remains too small and no repair occurs.

A system of positional information with a feedback from achieved states has
an inherent instability. More distal determination leads to an increase in positional information which, in turn, causes even more distal determination. The system is normally stable since AEMF transmitting the feedback diffuses and depends therefore on the average determination, while an increase in positional information leads only to a local distalization in the region close to the AER. An increase in positional information therefore has only a limited effect on the average determination. However, certain parameter can lead to an unstable situation. Examples are: lowering of the AEMF diffusion rate or of the proliferation rate resulting, for instance, from killed cells. The result would be the formation of the most distal structures, the digits, at a premature position. Such a pattern has been observed in chicken limb buds after X-ray irradiation (Wolpert et al., 1979) and in children whose mothers have taken the drug Thalidomide during pregnancy (see Merker et al., 1980 for review).

A similar manifestation of the instability in the formation of the distalmost structure can be seen in the formation of digits if a small piece of a regeneration blastema is cultured in an ectopic position of the organism (Stocum, 1968). According to the model, cells at a distance from the AER must be available into which the increased AEMF can diffuse (Fig.11.10), otherwise its accumulation would lead to premature distal transformations.

In conclusion, feedback of achieved determination onto morphogen production and therefore onto positional information provides a positional information scheme in outgrowing systems. The lability of cells in the progress zone and the stability at more proximal positions is a necessary consequence. With such a model, the mechanism for determination of the antero-posterior (Fig.10.1, 10.7) and the proximodistal axes become very similar and both axes become fixed by the cooperation of patches of differently determined cells.
Pattern formation by lateral activation of locally exclusive states

Several phenomena remain unexplained by the mechanisms of pattern formation discussed so far. These include the formation of a stripe-like pattern, the intercalary regeneration of missing elements in a sequence of structures, and the decision as to whether regeneration or duplication occur in imaginal disks. These phenomena are explicable under the assumption of a lateral activation of mutual exclusive states (Meinhardt and Gierer, 1980). An intuitive understanding of the mechanism envisaged may be provided by an analogy. Let us assume there are two families, A and B. At places where A is living, B cannot live and vice versa, they are locally exclusive. But both help each other and depend on the mutual help. A stable state is possible when areas populated by A are in close proximity to areas populated by B. The help has to be of a longer range, “across the street”. Due to the required help, both can exist only in a close but wellbalanced community. Due to the local exclusiveness, they belong either to A or to B but not to both and are therefore separated. The analogy is easily extended to more than two families, let us say 1,2,3...n and each needs the help of one or both neighbours. The most stable state is then a sequential order of the families in space.

The analogy can be used to illustrate the difference with respect to the mechanism of lateral inhibition discussed above which may be compared with the rise in power and wealth of one family, at the expense of the rest of the population. (For an adaptation of that model to socioeconomic problems see Gierer, 1981c.) The population plays merely a passive role, it is the necessary background on which a center of power develops in a self-enhancing manner. Such a family would engage all its power to suppress the rise in power of a second family with similar ambitions, especially in a close community. In contrast, in the lateral activation mechanism, the co-existence of two (or more) different families is favored since they need each other in a symbiotic manner. A mutual activation of cell types, a “cell sociology”, has also been proposed by Chandebois, 1976b.
12.1 Molecular interactions enabling lateral activation

In the preceding section, molecular reactions have been discussed which lead to mutually exclusive states. The lateral help can be introduced via diffusible substances in a straightforward manner; several examples will be given. One is based on the reaction scheme drawn in Fig.12.1; \( g_1 \) and \( g_2 \) are the (autocatalytic) substances required for the self-stabilization. The local mutual exclusion of the two states can be brought about by a common repressor (see Eq.11.3). The diffusible substances \( s_1 \) and \( s_2 \) provide the long-ranging help of one feedback system to the other.

\[
\frac{\partial g_1}{\partial t} = \frac{cs_2 g_1^2}{r} - \alpha g_1 + D_g \frac{\partial^2 g_1}{\partial x^2} + \rho_0 \quad (12.1a)
\]

\[
\frac{\partial g_2}{\partial t} = \frac{cs_1 g_2^2}{r} - \alpha g_2 + D_g \frac{\partial^2 g_2}{\partial x^2} + \rho_0 \quad (12.1b)
\]

\[
\frac{\partial r}{\partial t} = cs_2 g_1^2 + cs_1 g_2^2 - \beta r \left( + D_r \frac{\partial r}{\partial x^2} \right) \quad (12.1c)
\]

\[
\frac{\partial s_1}{\partial t} = \gamma (g_1 - s_1) + D_s \frac{\partial^2 s_1}{\partial x^2} + \rho_1 \quad (12.1d)
\]

\[
\frac{\partial s_2}{\partial t} = \gamma (g_2 - s_2) + D_s \frac{\partial^2 s_2}{\partial x^2} + \rho_1 \quad (12.1e)
\]

Since all molecules \( g_i \) compete with each other, a disadvantage for one feedback loop is an advantage for the other. Therefore the lateral activation can be of a hidden form in which each of the feedback loops is subjected to a long-ranging self-inhibition:
12.1. MOLECULAR INTERACTIONS

\[
\frac{\partial g_1}{\partial t} = \frac{cg_1^2}{rs_1} - \alpha g_1 + D_g \frac{\partial^2 g_1}{\partial x^2} + \rho_0 \tag{12.2a}
\]

\[
\frac{\partial g_2}{\partial t} = \frac{cg_2^2}{rs_2} - \alpha g_2 + D_g \frac{\partial^2 g_2}{\partial x^2} + \rho_0 \tag{12.2b}
\]

\[
\frac{\partial r}{\partial t} = \frac{c_g}{s_1} + \frac{c_g}{s_2} - \beta r \left( + D_r \frac{\partial^2 r}{\partial x^2} \right) \tag{12.2c}
\]

(The equations for \(s_1\) and \(s_2\) are the same as Eq.12.1d,e.) The mutual help may be achieved by only one substance \(s\). For instance, \(s\) can be produced by \(g_1\) to which it is “poisonous” and can be destroyed by \(g_2\) which needs it; \(g_1\) needs \(g_2\) for the removal of the poison whilst \(g_2\) needs \(g_1\) for the supply of \(s\). Similarly, two stable states can be generated by two molecules repressing each other (Eq.11.2) and can be mutually stabilized by substances of a high diffusion range. A symmetrical form would be:

\[
\frac{\partial g_1}{\partial t} = \frac{c s_2}{a + g_2^2} - \alpha g_1 + D_g \frac{\partial^2 g_1}{\partial x^2} \tag{12.3a}
\]

\[
\frac{\partial g_2}{\partial t} = \frac{c s_1}{a + g_1^2} - \alpha g_1 + D_g \frac{\partial^2 g_2}{\partial x^2} \tag{12.3b}
\]

(For the Eq. of \(s_1\) and \(s_2\) see Eq.12.1d,e).

In all these examples a homogeneous spatial distribution is unstable since, for example, a local \(g_1\) elevation increases further due to the direct (Eq.12.1 and 12.2) or indirect (Eq.12.3) autocatalysis; the local \(g_1\) increase is connected with a corresponding \(g_2\) decrease (locally exclusive). Outside of this incipient \(g_1\) maximum, \(g_2\) wins the competition with \(g_1\) due to the direct (Eq.12.1) or indirect (Eq.12.2) help via \(s_1\). The result is an area of high \(g_1\) (low \(g_2\)) and an area of high \(g_2\) (low \(g_1\)) (Fig.12.1).

These systems have features desirable for the explanation of properties of different developmental systems. The interactions can subdivide a field into two or more parts with very good size regulation. For instance, if the \(g_2\) area is relatively large in comparison with the \(g_1\) area, \(g_1\) is strongly cross-activated. Cells at the boundary are converted from the high \(g_2\) into the high \(g_1\) state until the correct proportion is restored (Fig.12.1). The size regulation works only over a certain range, determined essentially by the range of the lateral help. If a field of cells has a much larger extension, a periodic alteration of \(g_1\) and \(g_2\) patches will be formed. Further, the mechanism allows the formation of a stable pattern in the short extension of the field, and of a stripe-like pattern. The observation of these features in isotropic developmental fields is a first indication that lateral activation may be involved.
12.2 Formation of stripes

Stripes - structures with a long extension in one dimension and a short extension in the other - are frequently encountered in development. A very obvious example is the coloration of many animals (see Murray, 1981), the stripes of a zebra being proverbial. In the visual cortex of vertebrates, areas connected with the right eye and with the left eye respectively are arranged in a stripe-like manner (Fig. 12.2). The thoracic segments of insects are subdivided into the stripe-shaped anterior and posterior compartments. Similarly, transplantation experiments with epidermal tissue of insect abdomen (Locke, 1959) suggest that the pattern elements have a very narrow extension in antero-posterior dimension but a large extension in dorso-ventral dimension. The pattern formation mechanism of lateral activation has the capability to form stripes. Since both feedback loops need each
12.2. FORMATION OF STRIPES

Figure 12.3: Formation of stripes. Mutual activation favours long common boundaries between areas of high $g_1$ and $g_2$ concentration. A checkerboard-like arrangement is disfavoured since it requires a high spatial resolution at the corners. To form larger coherent patches, some $g_1$ and $g_2$ diffusion is required, which blurs the resolution. A smoothing of the edges in the direction of the arrows (a) leads to the more stable stripes (b). Small asymmetries decide the orientation of the stripes. (c) Stripes in inorganic pattern formation: The Bénard-instability in a layer of liquid which is heated from below. The warmed up lower layer becomes lighter; long rolls of upstreams and downstreams are formed. Both exclude each other locally but enforce each other in a neighbourhood, satisfying our condition for stripe-formation.

other in close proximity, a long common boundary between both regions is favored. Fig.12.2 shows a computer simulation of Eq.12.3. If the pattern formation is initiated by random fluctuations, the orientation of the stripes is somewhat irregular. Nevertheless, they consist of long narrow ridges. Perfect stripes are formed if some initial spatial cues are present, e.g. if the pattern formation starts at one side of the field. The two types of stripes can have a different width if the strength of the autocatalysis or of the mutual help is different in the two feedback loops. Then, the equilibrium between the $g_1$ or $g_2$ cells would be shifted in favor of one or the other leading to a corresponding change in the number of high $g_1$ and high $g_2$ cells. In the ocular dominance columns mentioned above, visual deprivation of one eye leads to a narrowing of the corresponding stripes (Hubel et al., 1977). The question may arise why a stripe-like pattern emerges and not a checkerboard-like arrangement. In the latter case, even more boundary regions between “black” and “white” fields are created. Characteristic of a checkerboard pattern are sharp corners which would require a high spatial resolution for their formation. Any diffusion of $g_1$ and $g_2$ would blur this resolution. In contrast, a stripe-like pattern has no such corners (Fig.12.3).

A non-biological example for such “stripe” formation is the arrangement of upstreams and downstreams in layers of liquids after the onset of the Bénard instability (see Velarde and Normand, 1980). Heated from below, the lower layer becomes lighter and tends to stream upwards, while the upper cooler layer tends to stream downwards (Fig.12.3c). At a particular location either upstreams or downstreams are possible, but not both. They are locally exclusive. However, an upstream enforces a downstream in its surroundings and vice versa - it is obviously impossible to have only upstreams. Our formal conditions for stripe formation are therefore met in this example from physics, too.

In the following, the regulatory behavior of some developmental systems is
Figure 12.4: Pattern regulation in the dorso-ventral dimension of an insect egg. (a) normal embryo of a leaf hopper Euscelis. (b) After a longitudinal ligation, two complete embryos are formed, one in each fragment (Sander, 1971), indicating a high ability for regulation in the (shorter) dorso-ventral dimension. (c) No such regulation is possible in the antero-posterior dimension (see Figs. 8.6 and 8.7). (d-e) The organization of the dorso-ventral dimension requires pattern formation along the shorter dimension of the field which can be accomplished by lateral activation of locally exclusive states. A narrow fragment (e), bordered in (d), leads to a regulation of the gradient in the even shorter dimension (f, see also Figs. 13.7 and 13.8). That is in sharp contrast when compared with a pattern formed by a lateral inhibition mechanism where the gradient orient itself along the longest dimension of the field (see Fig. 4.3).

summarized and compared with that of the lateral activation mechanism, in particular with respect to size-regulation and the formation of striped pattern.

12.3 The dorso-ventral organization of the insect embryo

The dorso-ventral (DV) extension of an insect egg is only about one third of the antero-posterior extension. The possibility of stripe formation inherent in the mechanism of lateral activation, permits the formation of a stable high “dorsal” and a high “ventral” concentration along the whole antero-posterior axis and a graded concentration in-between. After a longitudinal ligation parallel to the A-P axis of a leaf hopper egg, a complete embryo is formed in both the dorsal and the ventral half of the egg (Fig. 12.4b). Each half produces many more structures when compared with the corresponding part of the non-operated egg. As shown in the simulations Fig. 12.4d-f, the mechanism of lateral activation is able to reform the terminal concentrations across the small (D-V) extension of the field even if, due to an experimental interference, it becomes even more narrow. In contrast, an activator-inhibitor mechanism would orient the pattern along the longest extension of the field. The employment of an activator-inhibitor mechanism for the DV-axis would require a primary organization of the A-P axis, e.g. a subdivision into segments as noted in Fig. 4.3.

On the basis of available experiments, it is difficult to assess whether the
fine structure within the dorso-ventral dimension results from a concentration
gradient, specifying positional information and leading, directly, to a position-
dependent cell determination as discussed above for the A-P axis. Other mech-
isms are conceivable. The DV-gradient can orient the sequence of dorso-
ventral structures while this sequence itself is formed in a self-regulatory way
(see Fig.13.7). Or, the primary D-V pattern could determine only the terminal,
most dorsal and most ventral structures whereas the other structures in between
are formed by intercalary “regeneration” (see Fig.13.3). An indication in favor
of a positional information scheme comes from a maternal effect mutation (dl)
of Drosophila, isolated by Nüsslein-Volhard (1979). If heterozygoteous, the most
ventral structure, the mesoderm, is missing to a greater or lesser degree. The
more dorsal structures are shifted and stretched towards the ventral midline. In
a positional information scheme, missing structures are expected whenever the
maximum concentration is not reached.

12.4 Compartmentalization and the reestablishment of com-
partment borders after experimental interference

The subdivision of the thoracic segments of insects into compartments (Garcia-
Bellido et al., 1973, 1976; Steiner, 1976, Wieschaus and Gehring, 1976; Crick and
Lawrence, 1975) is presumably a key paradigm for understanding progressive
subdivision of a developing embryo (see also chapter 9 and 14). In recent years,
much experimental effort has been concentrated on this subject and we would
like to show that some basic regulatory features of compartmentalization can be
explained by the lateral activation mechanism.

The thoracic segments have, at the time when they are determined, at the
blastoderm stage, an antero-posterior extension of only 3 - 4 cells (Lohs-Schardin
et al., 1979). Almost simultaneously a clonal separation into anterior and poste-
rior compartments takes place. These compartments have therefore the geometry
of narrow stripes, 1 - 2 cells wide, which extend presumably in a belt-like manner
around the blastoderm. As mentioned, the mechanism of lateral activation is able
to account for the stripe-like arrangement of two differently determined states.
The connection of this compartmentalization and the segmental determination
will become obvious in chapter 14.

The compartments are characterized by the following features:

(1) **Clonal restriction:** A cell, once specified to participate in the formation of the
anterior compartment will usually not be reprogrammed to form structures
belonging to the posterior compartment.

(2) **Transgression of compartmen borders:** After a severe experimental interfer-
ence with an imaginal disk, the compartment boundary can appear at a new
location. This shows that the normally fixed border does not result from
an irreversible determination but that it is maintained by a dynamic pro-
cess. Szabad et al. (1979) found after an incision of the wing disk that the
Figure 12.5: Transgression of compartment boundaries in the wing (after Szabad et al., 1979). Clones (hatched) are induced in a wing disk. The genetically marked cells are the offspring of a single cell. One day later (day 6), either an incision is made in the disk or cell death is induced. Due to these manipulations, the progeny of the marked cells can populate different compartments. This would never occur without the experimental interference. (a) A clone crossing the A/P boundary, (b) a clone crossing the D/V boundary, populating the dorsal and the ventral wing surface. (c) A wing with a bubble-like extrusion, crossing the A-P boundary. Such a distal structure is expected if dorsal specification appears in the ventral compartment (or vice versa) close to the A-P boundary. It would be analogous to leg duplication, Fig.9.4.

progeny of one genetically marked cell participates in the formation of two compartments, indicating unambiguously that some cells of the clone have been respecified (Fig. 12.5). Similarly, a fragment of the leg disk containing only cells of the anterior compartment can regenerate structures belonging to the posterior compartment (Schubiger and Schubiger, 1978). In these experiments, the compartment border is only slightly shifted. Since the structures formed are more or less normal, the shift can be visualized only with genetic markers.

(3) **Compartmental respecifications:** After other types of experimental interferences, the overall pattern is altered dramatically. For instance, a heat shock leads in a mutant of *Drosophila* to some cell death and this causes duplications or triplications of legs. Compartmental respecification (and with that, the formation of new compartment borders) is presumably the primary event in this malformation (see Fig.9.4). The location of the additional legs indicates that the cells of the outer anterior margin are especially labile with respect to a switch into a posterior specification.

These three phenomena - the normally fixed boundary, the possibility of a slight shift of the boundary, and a switch of some cells at a distance from the boundary into another compartmental specification - are easily explained by mutual activation of two locally exclusive feedback loops, A and P ($g_1$ and $g_2$ in Eq.12.1-12.3). The compartment border would be the transition between cells
12.4. REESTABLISHMENT OF COMPARTMENT BORDERS

Figure 12.6: Behaviour of a “compartment border” after an experimental interference. Assumed are two mutual exclusive states (\(g_1\), top, and \(g_2\), below), corresponding, for instance, to an anterior and posterior specification. The simulation shows a cross-section through a disk as function of time. (a) If the diffusion of \(g_1\) and \(g_2\) is low, the border between high \(g_1\) and \(g_2\) remains stable even after a substantial fraction of e.g. \(g_1\)-area is removed, the remaining \(g_1\) cells stabilizes the \(g_2\) cells. (b) However, a complete removal of the \(g_1\)-area triggers the pattern formation again and a new compartment border is formed. (c) A somewhat larger diffusion of \(g_1\) and \(g_2\), the border is less sharp and a partial removal leads to a shift of the border, and to a new partition into two areas. Whether a boundary can be shifted or not could depend on small variation in the diffusion rate.

of high A and high P. The transition will be a sharp step if the substances accomplishing the self-stabilization, A and P, show very little or no diffusion. After removal of a large part of, for example, the high P area, the border is not shifted, because the help of the remaining P cells is sufficient to stabilize the A cells (Fig.12.6a). However, after almost complete removal of the P area, the pattern formation process starts anew, leading to a new border at a different position (Fig.12.6b). A higher diffusion rate of A and P leads to different behavior (Fig.12.6c). The compartment border is not as sharp and can be shifted if one compartment is too large in relation to the other resulting in proportion regulation. Whether or not a sharp boundary between patches of differently determined cells exists may thus depend only on a difference in a diffusion rate and not in the underlying mechanism. The sharpness of the compartments in Drosophila and therefore their clonal restriction is presumably dictated by the small number of founder cells of a compartment. If many more founder cells were be involved, a reasonable diffusion of A and P would be required to maintain these “compartments” as a contiguous patch of cells. Such diffusion would lead to a loss of clonal restriction. The possible absence of clonal restriction in other developmental systems does not indicate that different mechanisms are involved. Therefore, whether or not compartments are involved in development of vertebrates is presumably only a semantic question.

The possible reason for compartmental respecification after heat shock (and cell death) may be that the killed cells do not participate in the cell communication via diffusion. With that, the support of one cell type by the other may become insufficient and a switch to the alternative compartmental specification occurs. Fig.12.7 shows some altered pattern after induced cell death. The probability of respecification increases with distance from the border since these cells
Figure 12.7: The change of compartmental specification by cell death. (a) two compartmental specifications (== and ::) are stable (see Fig. 12.6). (b-d) killed cells (x) are assumed to participate no longer in the cell communication via diffusion. Hence, the mutual support of one state by the other may be reduced which can lead to a partial change in the compartmental specification. The switch from one determination to the other may occur in one compartment (b,c) or both (d), and at a position close or distant to the border, (c,b). A new compartmental specification can lead to a new system of positional information, causing a new proximo-distal axis. (see Fig. 9.4)

become less and less supported by cells of the other compartment. The details of this switch mechanism depend on how the lateral activation is molecularly realized (see Eq.12.1-12.3). For instance, if the basis was a mutual inhibition of competing feedback loops (Eq.12.2), any lowering of this inhibition could lead to a compartmental respecification. Such a process would be similar to the unspecific induction (Fig.8.4). An increase in the basic production ($\rho_0$ in Eq.12.1 and 12.2), for instance, due to an elevated temperature, could also lead to a switch. On the other hand, the number of cells with A and P specification increases dramatically between the clonal separation (ca. 20) and the mature disk (ca. 50,000). This leads also to an increased distance of the cells from the border and, with that, from the other stabilizing cell type. The cells can be stabilized in the A or P determination if the stabilizing substances $s_1$ and $s_2$ are produced at a constant minimum rate ($\rho_1$ in Eq.12.1 and 12.2). A reason why A-cells are more easily reprogrammed to form P-cells then vice versa will be given on p. [155]

12.5 Systems with an organizing region at each end - regeneration of planarians

In discussing the regulatory features of hydra (chapter 6), we have not considered that hydra has in addition to the head a second organizing area with similar properties, the foot. Similarly, the head and the foot of planarians are two boundary regions which organize the field in between (see Chandebois, 1973, 1976a). In hydias as well as in planarians, a head, a foot or both regenerate even in very small tissue fragments, indicating that systems which bear an organizing center at each end are stable over an enormous range of size. The head field and the foot field cannot be independent from each other, otherwise they would not appear at
12.5. REGENERATION OF PLANARIANS

Figure 12.8: Regeneration of planarians as example of pattern regulation in a bipolar field. Bipolar fields require two organizing regions, one at each end. It can be created by two activator maxima, one controlling, for instance, the head formation, the other the foot formation. A common inhibitor assures that both maxima appear at the largest possible distance from each other, at the opposite ends of the field. It is assumed further that on long range, both systems help each other either by a direct help (Eq.12.1) or by a specific self-inhibition (Eq.12.2). This assures that no system can suppress the other. (a) Pattern formation and growth: such pattern is stable over an enormous variation of sizes. (b) Removal of the foot leads to a regeneration of the foot activator despite of the proximity of the head. (c) Simultaneous regeneration of the head and the foot activator. The result is independent of the precise position of the fragment.

opposite sides. The mechanism of mutual activation of two feedback loops suggests an appropriate coupling of a head-forming and a foot-forming system which assures that both structures are present in the system and that they appear at maximum distance from each other.

In the application of lateral activation discussed so far, the common repressor which causes the local exclusivity has been assumed to be non-diffusible ($D_r = 0$ in Eq.12.1 and 12.2). This has the consequence that in each cell one (and only one) of the feedback loops is active otherwise the repressor concentration would drop to such low values that one of the loops would become autocatalytic. This was appropriate to describe, for instance, the compartmentalization where a cell must be either anterior or posterior. In contrast, if the common repressor is diffusible, the autocatalysis of the two feedback loops $g_1$ and $g_2$ (the head and the foot activators) will be restricted to small patches of cells. In the rest of the cells, neither $g_1$ nor $g_2$ is produced. They are suppressed by the diffusible repressor. Since both loops produce the same repressor, they repel each other and the autocatalytic areas appear therefore at opposite ends of the field. Neither the head system can dominate over the foot system nor the other way round because of the required mutual support of the two systems on a very long range (Eq.12.1). The same would be achieved if both systems, in addition to the common inhibitor, employed each a head- and a foot-specific inhibitor (Eq.12.2). Then, for instance, after removal of the foot, the foot inhibitor will drop until a new area of a high foot activator is induced. It appears at the end opposite to the head since this process is also sensitive to the common inhibitor. In Fig.12.8 and 12.9, these regulatory features are compared with those of planarian regeneration. The insensitivity with respect to size, and the ability to regenerate independent of whether one terminal structure remains present or not is in agreement with the experimental observation. Formation of a new head or foot does not require a complete separa-
CHAPTER 12. PATTERN FORMATION BY LATERAL ACTIVATION

Figure 12.9: (a,b) An incision into a planaria can be sufficient to initiate the formation of a new head and foot. (c,d) Model: In a two-dimensional field, a system with a head activator at one side and a foot activator at the other side would be stable. An incision, however, provides a diffusion barrier. The substances providing the mutual help ($s_1$ and $s_2$ in Eq.12.1 and 12.2) becomes so low that new maxima appear in the vicinity of the incision.

tion of fragments; an incision may be sufficient for their induction (Fig.12.9). The planarians also provide insights into how the anteroposterior and dorso-ventral axes are kept orthogonal to each other (which is not automatically the case if the patterns are formed by reaction-diffusion mechanisms). A condition for head or foot formation and thus for the reestablishment of an antero-posterior axis is a juxtaposition of dorsal and ventral tissue (Chandebois, 1979). A head or foot can therefore only be formed along the dorso-ventral borderline and never, for instance, within a purely dorsal region. This assures that both axes are orthogonal.

The same basic mechanism has been successfully applied to explain regulatory features of developmental systems which are so different as planarians and imaginal disks. In both cases, the common repressor (or inhibitor) keeps the two systems separate from each other and the long range help assures that both systems coexist with each other. Minor changes in the parameters - the substance bringing about local exclusion is diffusible or not - can account for the differences in these systems. In one case, the cells are either anterior or posterior and a sharp boundary exists inbetween. In the other case, the head and the foot areas are restricted to the opposite ends of the field and both areas are separated by a region which is neither head nor foot. The similarities of both systems become apparent in the similar reaction upon the same experimental interference, an incision. In an imaginal disk this can lead to a compartmental respecification, in planarian to the formation of new heads and feet. This example demonstrates that by minor changes of a basic mechanism, an adaptation of its properties for different requirements of developmental systems can be achieved.
Chapter 13

Generation of sequences of structures by mutual induction of locally exclusive states

13.1 A biological example: pattern regulation within a segment of an insect leg

In insects, the internal organization of a particular segment of a leg or of the abdomen has properties which differ essentially from the control of the overall sequence of segments in the body or leg. To have a firm basis for what a theory has to explain, the main results of intercalary regeneration in cockroach legs (Bohn, 1965, 1970a,b; French, 1976a,b, 1978) should be summarized. For the purpose of a brief description of the experimental results, the normal proximodistal sequence of structures within a leg segment will be called 123456789. This assignment is somewhat arbitrary since clear demarcation lines such as the segment borders between different segments do not exist between the internal structures. It has turned out that: i) internal parts removed from a sequence of structures by surgical interference are replaced. For instance, an experimentally produced sequence 123/89 would intercalate the missing structures after one or two molts and the normal sequence 123456789 (intercalated structures are in bold italic) is restored (Fig.13.1); ii) surplus parts are duplicated in an inverted form, e.g. an artificially produced sequence ...45678/456789 would form the structure 45678765456789 (Fig.13.1c); iii) a confrontation of the type ..678/345.. can also lead to an intercalary regeneration of the type ..678912345.. with an additional articulation in the intercalated 1-region (French, 1976a); iv) the elements within the segments are specified in a repetitive manner. Confrontation of different segments at the same internal level, e.g. a sequence 1234 of the femur (bold) and a sequence 5789 from the tibia would not intercalate the missing elements 567891234 (see Fig.9.6), while a confrontation 12/89 does lead to an intercalation of the type 123456789; v) intercalary regeneration is possible also in the circumferential direction, removed longitudinal stripes being replaced...
CHAPTER 13. MUTUAL INDUCTION OF LOCALLY EXCLUSIVE STATES

Figure 13.1: Intercalary regeneration in the proximo-distal dimension of cockroach legs (Bohn, 1970a,b, 1971; French, 1976a) (a) The levels of the tibia are denoted (arbitrarily) with 1,2,...,9. (b) The confrontation of a proximal 123- and a distal 89-piece leads, after one or two molds (M) to the regeneration of the missing elements. By using different species or mutants (stipled, clear) it has been shown that most of the regenerate is derived from the distal elements, indicating a distal to proximal respecification. (c) Surplus structures become duplicated. The regenerate is again derived mostly from those cells at the mismatching junction which carry the distalmost determination. The spines of the regenerate have a reversed orientation, indicating that the sequence of elements determines the polarity of the individual cells and not other way round. These experiments suggest a direct control of neighborhoods and argue against a long ranging positional information.

(French, 1978, 1980). The pattern within abdominal segments show an analogous regulatory behavior (Locke, 1959; Lawrence, 1966b; Wright and Lawrence, 1981a,b).

13.2 Possible mechanisms

Several mechanisms can be ruled out by just realizing that a sequence of the type ...56787654567... (Fig.13.1) is stable. For instance, the sequence cannot be controlled by a concentration gradient, generated by a source at one end and a sink at the other end of the segment, since such a gradient would be always monotonic. The intermediate peak would disappear. Is it possible to stabilize the intermediate peak, e.g., by an autocatalytic reaction as discussed above? Autocatalysis can compensate the loss by diffusion but would have the tendency to form the maximum concentration and thus to form the most terminal structures. We have seen such a behavior in the *Euscelis* egg where three abdomina (Fig.8.2) can be formed. During intercalary regeneration, the elements forming the initial graft-host junction (8 and 4 in the example ...56787654567...) are stable. An autocatalytic maintenance of the intermediate “maximum” is therefore unlikely. The same argument holds if one assumes that the gradient is stabilized by an active transport against the steepest slope (Lawrence, 1966a). The element 7 in a sequence ...56765... would profit from both sides and increase to 8 etc. until the terminal structure are formed.

An assumption which fits the observations more closely is that different quali-
ties and not different quantities are characteristic for the particular element of the sequence. The homeostatic property of the elements requires a self-stabilization. We will assume therefore that the sequence of structures consists of a sequence of differently determined (though perhaps closely related) structures, characterized for instance by the activation of particular genes out of a set of closely related control genes. The control of the correct neighbourhood of structures as indicated by the experiments summarized above would require a mutual activation of the self-stabilizing states. Confrontation of cells which are usually not neighbors leads at the mismatching junction to a respecification of some cells into that of the missing structures (and presumably to an increased rate cell division, though proliferation is no logical requirement for the proposed mechanism).

The absence of intercalary regeneration when a proximal part of a femur is combined with the distal part of a tibia (123456789 with 1234 from the femur, 56789 from the tibia) indicates that the same feedback loops are used repetitively for the determination of a particular levels within different segments. Therefore only one set of few control genes would be required for the internal specification of different segments.

The ability to rebuild a removed part of an organism has a clear selective advantage. However, the removal of only an internal fraction from a leg or from an abdominal segment will never occur under natural circumstances. The presence of intercalary regeneration suggests that this process is not primarily invented to regenerate lost internal parts, but may be a normal process in the formation of the diversities of structures. For instance, during normal development, the terminal elements of the sequence could be determined and the sequence is then completed by the filling in of the missing structures.

13.3 Chains of induction

In the last chapter we have seen how two different structures can stabilize each other. The essential ingredients of the model are autocatalytic feedback loops which exclude each other locally but which help each other via diffusing substances. This mechanism can be extended to more than two structures (feedback loops) in a straightforward manner. The generalization of Eq.12.1 to many loops is

\[
\frac{\partial g_i}{\partial t} = \frac{c_i g_i^2}{r} - \alpha g_i + D_c \frac{\partial^2 g_i}{\partial x^2} \quad (13.1a)
\]

with \( g_i' = g_i + \delta^- s_{i-1} + \delta^+ s_{i+1} \)

\[
\frac{\partial s_i}{\partial t} = \gamma (g_i - s_i) + D_s \frac{\partial^2 s_i}{\partial x^2} \quad (13.1b)
\]

\[
\frac{\partial r}{\partial t} = \sum_i c_i g_i^2 - \beta r \quad (13.1c)
\]
CHAPTER 13. MUTUAL INDUCTION OF LOCALLY EXCLUSIVE STATES

Figure 13.2: Generation of sequences of structures by lateral activation. (a) Molecular interactions which allow the generation of self-stabilizing sequences of structures in space. Each state of the sequence 1,2,... has (i) feedback on its own, for instance via an autocatalytic gene activator, (ii) a long range activation of its neighbors and (iii) it produces and reacts upon a common repressor (black double arrow). This three interactions lead to a self-stabilization and to correct neighborhoods. (b-d) Simulation with Eq. 13.1. Growth is assumed at the right margin. The concentration of the gene-activator molecules (shown as density of the dots) is plotted as a function of gene number and position. Initial separation of the field into two parts is accomplished as shown in Fig. 12.1. With increasing number of gene-2 cells, the concentration of the cross-activator of gene 3 ($s_2$, not shown) reaches a level which induces a transition of the gene-2 state into the gene-3 state etc. Long sequences of structures can be formed which are able to intercalate missing parts (see Fig. 13.3). (Equation 13.1 with $c_1 = 0.01, c_{i+1}/c_i = 0.74$, $\alpha = 0.1, D_g = 0.009, \beta = 0.15, \gamma = 0.1, D_s = 0.3, \delta^- = 0.4, \delta^+ = 0.12$. (after Meinhardt and Gierer, 1980)

In this example, the lateral help is introduced as a strong additional help and not as a necessary requirement (multiplicative factor). For instance, $\delta^-s_{i-1}$ describes the long range help from a lower neighbor. This enables stability of a particular state on its own, while in an interaction according to Eq.12.1 a state without a supporting neighbouring state would oscillate between the different states. The interaction according to Eq.13.1 has the capability for pattern formation, no external positional information is necessary to initiate the sequence. The formation of a sequence is shown in Fig.13.2. The orientation of the emerging sequence depends on small asymmetries, e.g. any slight preference for the location of the second element in relation to the first is sufficient (see also Fig.13.7). After the first two elements, No.1 and No.2, of the sequence have been laid down, the next state, No.3, has to be triggered and not No.1 again, otherwise only an alternation of two stages would emerge. A sequence will be formed if a state exerts a stronger help on the following state than on the preceding one. In terms of Eq.13.1, $\delta^- > \delta^+$. In fact, a term $\delta^-$ would be sufficient to activate each following state and therefore the whole sequence. As shown below, the term $\delta^+$ facilitates intercalary regeneration.

13.4 Conditions for intercalary regeneration

Imagine a mismatching junction, for instance 12/678. Each structure has the tendency to induce its neighbours, especially the more distal neighbours. In the
Figure 13.3: Simulation of intercalary regeneration. Assumed is a mutual activation of locally exclusive states (Fig. 13.2). The repair of a gap is possible if the lower states dominate. (a-c) The area in which genes 3, 4 and 5 are active is removed (a). (b) Close to the mismatching junction, the activity of gene 6 will cease in favor of either state 2 or 3. (c) The missing structures are then reformed by cross-activation similar as in Fig. 13.2. (d-f) Intercalation of excessive parts in reversed polarity. The distally programmed cells become reprogrammed to form the proximal structures, in agreement with the experimental observation Fig. 13.1c. The experimentally observed stimulation of cell proliferation at the mismatching junction is not taken into consideration (after Meinhardt and Gierer, 1980).

For the communication between the cells a small diffusion of the $g_i$ molecules is important. At the mismatching junction, $g_2$ and $g_6$ molecules are exchanged between the cells. Since the lower state 2 dominates, the $g_6$ production ceases in cells at the junction in favor of $g_2$. If structure 2 is sufficiently extended, structure 3 is induced (similar as during the original formation of the sequence) and the first step in the intercalary regeneration is completed. This process repeats itself until the correct neighbourhood of structures is restored. The mechanism is in agreement with the fact (Fig. 13.1) that both sides of the mismatching junctions contribute in the formation of the intercalate since the distal elements are reprogrammed by the contact with the more proximal structures and proximal structures form the more distal ones by the long-range induction. The mechanism has also the property of duplication of surplus structures as shown in the simulation Fig. 13.3d-f since only the correct neighbourhood between adjacent cells is controlled and directional (vectorial) cell properties are not involved; the polar-
The femur (FE) and tibia (TI) of a cockroach leg. The scanning electron micrograph show the different structures of (a) the outer (anterior and posterior) and (b) the inner (ventral) face of the femur.

Figure 13.4: The femur (FE) and tibia (TI) of a cockroach leg. The scanning electron micrograph show the different structures of (a) the outer (anterior and posterior) and (b) the inner (ventral) face of the femur.

ity of the sequence may be reversed during the correction of the neighbourhoods. The mechanism predicts that a particular element can only induce the neighboring element. No averaging mechanism should occur. For instance a sequence 12/89 should regenerate via an intermediate state 123789 and not via 12589.

13.5 Organization of imaginal disks and insect legs around their circumference

A leg segment of an insect has a fine structure not only in its proximo-distal dimension, but also around its circumference. From the very careful and detailed experiments of French (1978, 1980) we know that the pattern around the circumference is able to intercalate missing structures or to duplicate excessive structures analogous to the pattern regulation in the proximo-distal axis. French et al. (1976) have proposed a “polar coordinate model” postulating that the circumferential pattern consists of a continuous sequence of structures to which they assigned arbitrarily the positional values 1,2...12. They are arranged like the numbers on a clock face. Missing structures are assumed to regenerate according to the rule of shortest route. Thus confrontation of the type 12/78... would lead to the regeneration of the missing structures 3456 while a confrontation ...2345/234... would lead to the insertion of the structures 43, restoring in both cases normal neighborhoods. This rule accounts for the regeneration-duplication phenomenon observed in imaginal disks (Bryant, 1975a,b). Small disk fragments duplicate the remaining structures while larger fragments regenerate the complete structure. For instance, a small disk fragment 2345 duplicates during the closing up and wound healing. The terminal structures 5 and 2 become juxtaposed and the structures 4 and 3 are intercalated. This leads to the (circular) duplication 2345432. A larger fragment consisting for instance, of the structures 23456789 would intercalate, according to the rule of the shortest route, the missing structures 10 11 12 1, leading to the regeneration of the complete sequence.
13.5. ORGANIZATION OF IMAGINAL DISKS AND INSECT LEGS

Figure 13.5: Steps in the subdivision of an imaginal disk. (a) The primary event is assumed to be the formation of compartment boundaries. (b) By cooperation of three or four compartments a positional information system is formed (see Fig. 9.1, 9.2). The distance from the intersection of borders is decisive for the proximo-distal determination of the cells and whether the cells will form an imaginal disc or not. (c) Particular structures out of the set of circumferential structures are induced along the border between two compartments. (d) The missing structures are filled in by intercalation.

The polar co-ordinate model provides formal rules. What could be the molecular mechanisms on which this regulatory behavior is based? How do the cells recognize what the shortest route is? In principle, the maintenance of the correct neighborhoods of structures around the circumference can be achieved in the same way as described above for the proximo-distal sequence. Long range activation of states which locally exclude each other leads to sequences of structures in which the correct neighborhood is maintained in a self-regulatory manner. Since the circumference is assumed to consist of different qualities (not quantities as in a gradient system) each structure can support their neighboring structure: no special discontinuity occurs, for instance, between structure 12 and 1. Several questions are to be answered: How is such a sequence of structures initially formed in development? How is the circumferential pattern aligned with respect to the primary body axes? Why are left and right legs mirror images of each other? As we have seen (chapter 9), the subdivision into compartments is the precondition that an imaginal disk and therewith a leg or any other appendage can be formed. Thus, in disks or in legs a coarse subdivision is given from the beginning. In the leg, these compartments are long narrow stripes running in proximodistal direction. The compartments must be, so to say, the frame for the finer subdivision around the circumference similar as the segment borders are the frame for the finer subdivision within the segments. In Drosophila, a particular tarsal bristle row coincides with the A-P compartment border (Lawrence et al., 1979). The bristles are made irregularly from both compartments, indicating that along the border a signal is created (see Fig.9.1b-d) which enables bristle formation. On the other hand, the symmetrical tarsal structures have no obvious relation to the non-symmetric pattern of compartments. Direct evidence exists that intercalary regeneration has something to do with boundaries. During intercalary regeneration of cockroach legs, boundaries of clonal restriction are maintained, suggesting a similar compartmentalization in cockroaches and Drosophila (French, 1980). For instance, cells of the posterior compartment can force cells of the anterior compartment to eventually regenerate missing structures up to the border, but
the anterior cells will not give rise to posterior structures and vice versa. The question is then how the fine structured pattern of the circumference (e.g. 1 - 12) falls into register with a coarse subdivision into the anterior (A), posterior (P) and ventral (V) compartment? A possible mechanism consists of a strong inducing influence of a particular compartment border on a particular structure, for instance the structure 1 may be induced by an A-P border, structure 5 by a P-V border and structure 8 by V-A border, followed by the intercalation of the missing structures (Fig.13.5). This mechanism of co-ordinating the fine structure with the compartmental subdivision provides also a molecularly feasible basis for the regeneration-duplication phenomenon (Fig.13.6). Small fragments contain, as a rule, only cells of two compartments. If, for instance, cells of anterior compartmental specification are missing in a fragment of a disk, they will remain missing. After closing the wound, a second confrontation of the remaining posterior and ventral compartment occurs and this leads to a duplication (Fig.13.6a-c). In contrast, if some anterior cells remain in the fragment, a regeneration of the complete circumference would follow (Fig.13.6d-f). However, the possibility of compartmental respecification has to be taken into consideration. A missing compartmental specification may be restored by a partial respecification of remaining cells (Fig.12.5, 12.6). In such a case, both complementary fragments resulting from a partition of a disk can regenerate the complete set of circumferential structures such as observed by Kauffman and Ling (1981). In contrast, a duplication of both complementary fragments is less likely and would occur only after massive cell death.

French (1978) found a very striking absence of intercalation after confrontation of particular circumferential structures of the anterior with those of the posterior side of a cockroach leg. This situation is reminiscent of the absence of intercalation when, for instance, a mid-tibia is grafted onto a mid-femur. The missing distal femur and proximal tibia remain missing (Bohn, 1970a, see Fig.9.7b). This has led to the conclusion that the positional values for the internal proximo-distal organization of segments are used in a repetitive manner within each segment and that the overall proximo-distal subdivision is made in a combinatorial way. A similar repetition of positional values within each compartment would explain why the confrontation of a midanterior compartment and a mid-posterior compartment eventually heals without intercalation.

In conclusion, like an umbrella needs at least three spokes to put up the interconnecting tissue, the three compartmental borders in the leg disk (or the two intersecting borders in the wing disk) are required to unfold the circumferential pattern. The final stabilization of neighboring structures and intercalation of missing structures can be accomplished by long range activation and short range exclusion of different states. The control of the fine structure by the compartments assures its correct orientation in relation to the main body axes. In connection with the model which describes the formation of compartments in the first place (chapter 14) this mechanism accounts for the initial generation, the maintenance during further development and regeneration of the circumferential structures.
13.6. SEQUENCE FORMATION BY INDUCTION AND LATERAL INHIBITION

Figure 13.6: The regeneration-duplication phenomenon. (a) A small fragment contains, as the rule, only cells of two compartments. In this example, the circumferential elements contain only structures belonging to the ventral and posterior compartment of a leg disk. In terms of Fig. 13.5 after closure of the wound, a new structure 5 (encircled) is induced at the newly formed P-V border (b). Intercalation of the remaining structures leads to duplication of the fragment (c). (d) If the fragment is only slightly larger and contains cells of the anterior compartment, an A-P juxtaposition results. This leads to the induction of a new structure 1 (e) and intercalation leads to the regeneration of all circumferential structures. The type of compartmental confrontation is assumed to be decisive whether regeneration or duplication occurs but the fact of transgression of compartment borders (see Fig. 12.5, 12.6) has to be taken into consideration.

13.6 Sequence formation by induction and lateral inhibition

For the generation of a sequence of structures, we have assumed a long-range cross-activation of several competing feedback loops (Eq.13.1). An alternative would be that the size of each element is limited by a long-range selfinhibitory substance. Equation 13.2, a generalization of Eq.12.2, describes a possible interaction of substances.

\[
\frac{\partial g_i}{\partial t} = \frac{c_i g_i^2}{d_i r} - \alpha g_i + D_{s_i} \frac{\partial^2 g_i}{\partial x^2} \quad (13.2a)
\]

with \( g_i' = g_i + m \delta^- g_{i-1} + \delta^+ g_{i+1} \)

\[
\frac{\partial d_i}{\partial t} = \gamma (g_i - d_i) + D_{s_i} \frac{\partial^2 s_i}{\partial x^2} \quad (13.2b)
\]

\[
\frac{\partial r}{\partial t} = \sum_i \frac{c_i g_i'^2}{d_i} - \beta r \quad (13.2c)
\]
CHAPTER 13. MUTUAL INDUCTION OF LOCALLY INCLUSIVE STATES

Figure 13.7: Orientation of a self-regulating sequence by a gradient. If the mechanism for generating a sequence of structures (sequence of activated feedback loops or “genes”) has the capability of pattern formation (reaction 13.2), a gradient can orient the sequence. (a,b) The emerging pattern is independent of the steepness or the absolute concentration of the gradient. The size regulation of the elements is a property of the sequence-generating mechanism, not of the gradient. (c) Initiation by a symmetrical distribution can lead to two complete sequences even if low concentrations are absent. Each element becomes correspondingly smaller. Such complete duplication is observed in the dorso-ventral pattern of amphibians (Fig. 13.8) and insects (Fig. 12.4). (d) If initiated by random fluctuation, the emerging sequence has an unpredictable orientation and gaps may occur but the mechanism Eq.13.2 assures that each element is present at least once in the field. From top to bottom in each subpicture: The orientating gradient (m in Eq.13.2), the initial, an intermediate and the final pattern of “gene activities” as function of position calculated with Eq.13.2 with
\[ c = 0.1, \alpha = 0.03, D_g = 0.05, \beta = 0.05; \gamma = 0.2, D_d = 0.4, m \delta^+ < 0.1, \delta^- = 0.0 \]

(m is a morphogen as shown at the top of Fig. 13.7) A sequence of elements, generated in this way, has a good size regulation of the elements. If one element is relatively too large, the larger self-inhibition provides a disadvantage for that particular feedback loop compared with the other competing loops and it will shrink. For similar reasons, a very strong tendency exists to form each element of the sequence at least once in the field. Should an element be missing, the self-inhibition of the missing structure would become so low that it would be induced via the cross-activation of the neighboring structures (\( \delta^+ \) and \( \delta^- \) in Eq.13.2). Therefore, a sequence of the type 12/56 regenerates the missing elements 3 and 4. No hierarchy is required for this intercalation. However, the mechanism has no tendency to intercalate structures if this is connected with a duplication of existing structures as, for instance, in a sequence 2345/2345. The structures 4 and 3, missing at the gap, are already present twice in the field and the long-range self-inhibition emanating from the existing structures will suppress intercalation. The system has more the tendency to complete the two partial sequences. Without additional assumptions, this mechanism is not appropriate to explain intercalary regeneration within insect segments (Fig. 13.1). However, as shown below, it may be the way to lay down the dorso-ventral structures of vertebrates.
13.7 Orientation of a self-regulating sequence by a gradient - an alternative to the interpretation of positional information

If a mechanism is given which has the strong tendency to form a sequence of structures in space (Eq.13.2) a small and possibly unspecific stimulus is sufficient to orientate the sequence. The sequence itself is formed in a self-regulatory manner. This offers an alternative to the measuring of local concentrations as discussed earlier for the interpretation of positional information (Fig.11.5). Imagine a graded distribution of some substance or of a physical parameter which has, for instance, some influence on the cross-activation of the feedback loops (m in Eq.13.2). If initially the loop No.1 is active in all cells of a field, the cells on one side switch faster to loop 2 and so on, and the orientation of the emerging sequence is determined. Fig.13.7 shows that neither the steepness of the slope nor the absolute concentration but only the overall orientation of this gradient has an essential influence on the resulting pattern. No special thresholds exist for the particular structures. Therefore, the orienting gradient need not be size-regulated for an adaptation of the correct size of the individual elements in relation to the total size of the field. The size regulation is a property of the mechanism which generates the sequence. In short, not the signal but the response would be size-regulated (Fig.13.7).

If the orientating stimulus is symmetric, two sequences, mirror-symmetric to each other, can result. Each element is present twice in the field but each is half as large. This type of pattern regulation is known to occur in amphibians. As shown by Spemann and Mangold (1924) in their classic experiment, the implantation of a dorsal lip of a blastopore into the ventral side of a blastula leads to a dorsal-ventral-dorsal duplication (Fig.13.8). Cooke (1981a) has shown that the duplicated structures are squeezed into the same total field, the structures are correspondingly smaller. No additional cell proliferation takes place. Especially in small duplications, the structure next to the plane of symmetry - the pro-nephros - is frequently absent. According to the model, both pro-nephros would be relatively close together and one may suppress the other. By removing portions of the egg, Cooke has also shown that the complete dorso-ventral (D-V) pattern can be formed in a much smaller field which demonstrates the size-regulating features of the DV-pattern. For amphibians, it can be ruled out that the size regulation of the D-V structures result from a size-regulated DV gradient which is produced by a source-sink mechanism. No organizing properties of the ventral side can be detected upon transplantation.

A complete DV duplication is also possible in insects (see Fig.12.4b). A comparison of these results with those obtained for the antero-posterior (A-P) pattern of insects (Fig.8.5 and 8.7) reveals basic differences between the two systems. If a symmetrical (A-P) pattern is formed in insects, each half forms fewer structures in comparison with normal development. This had forced the conclusion that the local morphogen concentration controls which particular structure is formed (Fig.8.5). In the D-V organization, each half forms many more structures - in fact
CHAPTER 13. MUTUAL INDUCTION OF LOCALLY EXCLUSIVE STATES

Figure 13.8: Pattern duplication in the dorso-ventral axis of amphibian embryos (after Cooke, 1981a). (a) An embryo with the plane of the dorso-ventral cross-section shown in (b). (c) If a dorsal lip of a blastopore, the organizer, is transplanted to the ventral side of a blastula (d), a symmetrical duplication of the dorso-ventral pattern results (e). Both halves contain the complete set of structures. The individual structures are correspondingly smaller. That is very different from the antero-posterior duplication in insects (Fig. 8.5). The gradient produced by the organizer is assumed to orient a self-regulating sequence (Fig. 13.7).

the complete set - suggesting that in this case it is not the absolute concentration which is measured but that a self-regulatory sequence is triggered. It is remarkable that - as far as we know - all systems in which the absolute concentration of a morphogen is measured (insect body segments, digits of vertebrates, segments of insect legs) the pattern to be formed consists of a repetition of similar but not identical subunits (see chapter 14).

In conclusion, feedback loops which support each other at long range, but compete with each other at short range can generate sequences of structures in space. These sequences are self-regulatory, missing structures can be added and gaps can be repaired by intercalary regeneration. Control genes could be, but need not to be involved in the generation of the feedback loops.

13.8 Other applications of equations describing mutual activation of locally exclusive processes

For the explanation of the early evolution of genetic information, Eigen and Schuster (1978) have proposed equations similar to Eq.12.1 and 13.1. This similarity is not accidental. In the evolution of genetic information as well as in the activation of control genes, autocatalytic loops are assumed. In one case genes feed back on their own activity, in the other case pieces of nucleic acids are self-replicating. In both cases, a diversity of such competing loops should co-exist with each other despite the “survival of the fittest”. The co-existence results from the mutual dependence of the feedback loops. The essential difference in the model we proposed lies in the spatial order of the feedback loops which arises from their short range exclusion and the long range support. Further, each group of dividing cells in an organism represents an autocatalytic system. Different groups compete with each other since they consume the same nutritional substances. Nevertheless, the faster-dividing cells should not overgrow the others. A balance between the different cell types requires mutual dependence. A cancerous cell may have escaped this dependence from other cell types. Eq.12.1 and 13.1 describe essentially a type of symbiosis and the applications are presumably more general.
Chapter 14

Digits, segments, somites: the superposition of periodic and sequential structures

A type of structure which is frequently encountered in higher organisms consists of a sequence of similar but not identical substructures (Fig. 14.1). For example, the segments of insects, separated by segment borders, are arranged in a repetitive manner. In the vertebrate limb, areas of presumptive digits and of programmed cell death alternate. However, each digit or each segment is different from the other, and is a member of a sequence of these substructures. Other examples are the bones of the backbone of vertebrates which originate from the sequence of somites.

The assumption of a graded distribution of a morphogen and the interpretation of this positional information has enabled us to explain many experiments concerning the determination of the insect segments (chapter 8), the segments of insect legs (see Figs. 9.2 and 9.4) and of vertebrate limbs (Figs. 10.1 and 10.7). In these models, the periodic aspect of these structures has been neglected.

Figure 14.1: Superposition of sequential and periodic structures - a basic pattern in higher organisms. Sequences of similar but not identical subunits form more complex structures. Biological examples: (a) the segments of an insect (a silkworm, drawn after Tazima, 1964), (b) the digits of an amphibian limb and (d) the vertebrae of a human being.
this chapter we will see how the periodic alternation between two or three alternative states enables in a gate-like manner the transition from one state in a sequence to the next in a very reliable way.

To see which type of mechanism can account for the generation of such dual structures we will again refer to the insect system, especially to Drosophila, since the most detailed experimental observations are available there. It will turn out that the mechanism derived from the insect system is able to explain observations in the somite system, indicating that the generation of sequential and periodic structures in precise register is a very basic mechanism in development.

14.1 The formation of the periodic pattern is the primary event

In the thoracic segments of insects, almost simultaneously with the clonal separation into segments at the blastoderm stage, a separation into anterior (A) and posterior (P) compartments takes place (Garcia-Bellido et al., 1973, 1976; Steiner, 1976; Wieschaus and Gehring, 1976). Presumably they are arranged like zebra stripes and each segment contains one pair of A-P-stripes. Both patterns are in precise register. For instance, the border between Mesothorax to Metathorax is also always a P-A border. Both patterns must arise in a coupled process. The question is then, which process is the primary event. Either initially the sequence of segmental specifications 1,2,3... is formed and each region is later subdivided into an A and a P region (1A, 1P, 2A...) or the primary event is an A-P-A... pattern and each pair of stripes obtains in a secondary process a particular segmental specification (Fig.14.2). An answer to this very important question can be obtained from mutants in the control gene region responsible for the metathoracic specification, the Bithorax gene complex (Lewis, 1963, 1964, 1978; Sander, 1981). If, for instance, the locus Cbx or bx is mutated, a particular segmental specification extends into an adjacent segment without changing the A-P-A pattern (Fig.14.3), indicating that the A-P-A pattern is independent of the segmental specification and that the formation of the A-P-A pattern is the primary event. It is rather the coupling of the segmental specification to this A-P-A pattern which is abolished in the mutation of the Bithorax gene complex (BX-C). In this chapter, we will see how this coupling is achieved during normal development and how particular transformations come about after a failure of particular elements in this switching system. That the periodic subdivision is the primary event appears also reasonable from an evolutionary point of view. The insects evolved during evolution from lower Arthropodes and Annelides, creatures with many similar segments, indicating that the repetition of almost identical subunits was an early evolutionary achievement while diversification of the segments is a latter event.
14.2. THE PENDULUM - ESCAPEMENT - MODEL

14.2. "Gating" of the transition from one control gene to the next: the pendulum - escapement - model

Assuming that the formation of the periodic structure is the primary event, a mechanism accounting for the precise superposition of both periodic and sequential structures must have the following features (Meinhardt, 1981): (i) It is able to create a stable periodic structure, possibly stripes, (ii) the alternation of stripes controls the segmental specification and (iii) the number of repetitive elements and therefore the width of the stripes is under the control of a morphogen gradient.

The mechanism envisaged can be illustrated by an analogy. Imagine a grandfather clock. The weights are at a certain level (corresponding to the local morphogen concentration). They bring a pendulum into motion which alternates between two extreme positions. The escapement mechanism allows the hand of the clock to advance one unit after each change from one extreme to the other. The periodic movement of the pendulum is the primary event and the movement of the hand of the clock is under its control. As the clock runs down, the number of left-right alternations of the pendulum and hence the final position of
the pointer is a measure for the original level of the weights (level of morphogen concentration). In terms of the mechanism for the interpretation of positional information, we will assume that, under the influence of the morphogen, the cell alternates between two states, to be called A (anterior) and P (posterior) and that the total number of alternations corresponds to the level of the local morphogen gradient. Under the influence of this alternation, for instance at each P-A transition, the cell switches stepwise from one specification i to the next, i+1 (i=0,1,2...n). The stepwise advancement from one state to the other under the influence of the alternation between P and A may be compared with a ship in a channel with locks. A lock can be in two states. Either the upper gate is open and the lower gate is closed or other way round. In one state, the ship can enter into the lock but it can pass only after a switch into the other state. One state is characterized by the preparation, but blocking, of the transition. The other state enables the transition but no entrance into the next preparative phase is possible. This enabling and blocking of transitions by the alternation between two states we will call "gating". Only a full cycle of alternation allows an progression of one and only one step. In this way, the graded morphogen concentration becomes converted into the alternating A-P-sequence and into the sequence of structures 0,1 ... n. Since both patterns are formed in this coupled way, they are necessarily in register. A particular state of a cell can be characterized by its A-P state and its specification, for instance, 1A, 1P, 2A and so on. Cells exposed to a lower morphogen concentration obtain their final determination earlier, after a few alternations while distal determinations require more time. This is in agreement with the stepwise and unidirectional "promotion" of the cells under the influence of the morphogen which was concluded from the insect experiments (see Fig.8.7).

The following elements are required for the realization of the model:

(1) The cells can be in one of two states (A or P). The transition from at least one of these states to the other, for instance P to A, requires a threshold morphogen concentration. The alternative transition (A to P) can be an autonomous process like the swinging back of a pendulum.

(2) The advancement from one specification, that means from one structure-controlling gene activity, to the next (i to i+1), proceeds under the influence of such a transition, e.g. P-A.

14.3 The oscillation between A and P and the generation of stable A-P-stripes

The fact that an anterior fragment of a leg disk can regenerate posterior compartmental specifications indicates that the periodic arrangement of compartments is a dynamically stable system (see Fig. 9.2 and 9.3). We have seen (chapter 12, Fig. 12.2) how stripes can be formed and stabilized. The basic idea was that two states, to be called A and P, exclude each other locally but at long range help each other and depend on this help. This necessitates that both structures
14.3. THE OSCILLATION BETWEEN A AND P

Figure 14.4: The P-A-P oscillation under the driving force of a morphogen gradient. The simulation should demonstrate that the number of P-A transitions a cell has made in its developmental history is the same as the number of the A-P stripe in space in the finally stable pattern. Initially, all cells are assumed to be in the P-state. Those cells exposed to a certain morphogen concentration (m) switch to A; the first P-A border is formed. Those A cells distant to this border are not stabilized and switch back to P, forming a second (A-P) border. With each further oscillation, a new stable A-P stripe is formed. If for each further P-A transition a slightly increased morphogen concentration is required, the width of the A-P stripes is determined by the gradient (Fig. 14.10). The final result is a stable regular A-P-A pattern. Nevertheless, this A-P pattern has self-regulating features: An isolated patch of A-cells will reestablish an A-P pattern (Fig. 12.6)

are formed in close proximity to one another. A stripe-like pattern is especially favored since, in this case, the long common boundary regions enable an effective mutual stabilization.

While A and P cells stabilize each other in the region of a common boundary, it is a property of such an interaction that a group of cells consisting of one type only (A or P) can oscillate back and forth between the two possible states. If, for instance, all cells are in state A, the state P gets an enormous help while the state A is not supported. After a certain time, the cells switch from A to P. Later, the cells switch back to A for the same reason.

This spatially homogeneous oscillating system would be converted into a pattern which is stable in time if, at any location, an A-P border has been formed. Imagine a linear array of cells, which are under control of a graded morphogen
Figure 14.5: Stages in the interpretation of positional information according to the pendulum-escapement model. The antero-posterior gradient (top of each subpicture) provides positional information. (a) Originally, all cells are in the P state and gene 0 (coding e.g. for extraembryonal development) is active. In the P state, a substance is produced which activates the next following control gene (x) but this transition is blocked. (b) All cells exposed to a threshold concentration switch to the A state and therewith from gene 0 to gene 1 (since in the A-state the transition is not blocked). A and P cells need each other in the neighborhood for mutual stabilization. Those A cells without P neighbors switch back to the P-state (c). For the next P-A switch, an increased morphogen concentration is required. This process will continue (d) until the total field is subdivided into the periodic pattern of anterior and posterior specifications and into the sequential pattern of gene activity. (f) Simulation of a “bicaudal” embryo (see Fig. 8.3). A computer program for these simulations is provided in chapter 17.

concentration. All cells are in the P state and a certain morphogen concentration is required to induce the first P-A transition. Cells exposed at least to the threshold concentration switch from P to A and form in this way the first P-A border. Cells close to this border stabilize each other while the A cells distant to this border switch back to P, forming in this way a second A-P border. Again, cells distant to this new boundary will switch back to A, and so on. After each full cycle, one pair of A-P stripes is added. As the process progresses, the region of the stable spatially alternating A-P pattern enlarges at the expense of the spatially homogeneous cells which oscillate between A and P in time. The borderline between the stable and oscillating cells move over the field in a wave-like manner. This mechanism will continue until the total area is subdivided into a stable spatial periodic A-P pattern. A biological system in which repetitive structures are formed visibly in a wave-like manner is the genesis of somites of vertebrates. It will be discussed below in more detail.
14.4 Switching to new a control gene under the influence of posterior-anterior (P-A) transition

After a stable state is reached in a particular cell, the number of oscillations a cell has made in its history is the same as to the number of the stripe it belongs in space (Fig. 14.4). The unequivocal correlation between the number of oscillations a cell has made and its position in the field enables a reliable activation of a particular control gene in a particular stripe, for instance, by the following mechanism. In the P state, the switching to the next control gene prepared but the transition is blocked (“posterior block”). In the A-state, the transition is no longer blocked and the next following control gene becomes activated. However, no attempt is made in A to activate the subsequent control gene. As explained above with the ship and lock analogy, this has the consequence that a transition from one control gene to the next is possible only during a P-A transition and the control gene which finally becomes activated, depends on the total number of P-A transitions (Fig. 14.5). Let us assume that all cells are originally in the gene-0, P-state (0P). Only those cells which are exposed to a sufficient morphogen concentration will switch to A. Since it is a P-A transition, the cells switch from specification 0 (corresponding, for instance, to extraembryonal development in insects or to the anterior necrotic zone in digit formation) to the state 1. The 0P and 1A cells stabilize each other, while cells further distant switch from 1A to 1P as described above. If the threshold remain unchanged, a periodic structure would be formed as described above since the next 1P-2A transition would take place in a region of even higher morphogen concentration. It is conceivable, however, that a certain incremental increase in the next P-A threshold results from the previous 0-1 transition. If this were so, a definite increment in the morphogen concentration would be required and the steepness of the gradient would determine the width of a pair of stripes.

14.5 Expected mutations and the phenotypes of the Bithorax complex of Drosophila

The best investigated complex of genes controlling a particular segmental specification is the Bithorax gene complex of *Drosophila* (Fig. 14.6; Lewis, 1963, 1964, 1978; Garcia-Bellido, 1977). At the first glance, the phenotypes of the mutants appear quite puzzling. For instance, the anterior or the posterior haltere may become transformed into the corresponding part of the wing, flies with two wings can appear, the first abdominal segment may be transformed into mesothoracic structures and bear a fourth pair of legs, and so on. Why in most cases is only one half of a segment transformed? Why do these transformations respect compartment boundaries? Why do they cause, as a rule, a transformation into a structure of a neighboring segment? The analysis of the phenotypes led me to the pendulum model as described above and after finding it, the mutations of the Bithorax complex (BC-X) appear to be the consequence of an underlying prin-
ciple and not just an accumulation of genetic modification collected during the evolutionary history. It should be shown that the mutations are explicable under the assumption that the BX-C is the control gene for the Metathorax (MT) and that its activation is gated by A-P-A changes. To see which type of mutants we expect on the basis of the model, the stepwise transition from one control gene to the next under the P-A alternation should be compared with the passage through a series of rooms. All the rooms are separated by doors. Each evening (P-state), one can proceed to the next door and ring the door bell. The next morning (A-state), the corresponding door will be opened. One can enter into the room and the door will be closed behind. However, one cannot proceed to the next door. This is possible only the following evening. The numbers of rooms someone has passed would correspond to the number of day-and-night cycles. The following types of “mutations” are expected:

1) “Broken door”: One can enter into the next room too early, already at the night before. If each room has two doors, one broken door is sufficient for an entry too early - the mutation is dominant.

2) “Broken door bell”: The door will not be opened correctly with the P-A transition. One remains in the last room. If two door bells are present, one is sufficient to ring the bell - the mutant is recessive.

3) “Last door left open”: One enters into the next room but the door cannot be closed behind. The new room has partially the character of the previous room.

The arrangement of the alleles on the chromosome as well as - according to the model - their normal function and transcription are shown in Fig.14.6. Hayes et al. (1979) have proposed that the BC-X genes are transcribed from an operator region in the $Ubx^+$ region and that the direction of transcription depends on the compartmental specification of the particular cell. I will follow this proposal. Transcription is to the left (proximally) in the anterior compartment, thus enabling the transcription of $Cbx^+$ and $bx^+$ while in the posterior compartment, it is to the right, causing the transcription of $bxd^+$ and $pbx^+$.

To correlate the particular loci of the BX-C with particular functions in the model we have to compare the expected and observed mutations. In the PMS (posterior Mesothorax) we expect that an attempt to activate the control gene for the MT, the BX-C, is made but that this activation is blocked, for instance by a transcriptional block of the BX-C. A failure of this block (“broken door”) will be a dominant mutation and lead to MT structures in the PMS segment. That is the phenotype of the $Cbx$ mutation (Fig.14.7). The $Cbx^+$ region is assumed to prevent the transcription of the $bx$ region in a P-state. After a switch to the A-state, this posterior transcriptional block (PB) is released and $bx$ can be transcribed. With this P-A transition, a transition from MS to MT specification should occur: We will assume therefore that wildtype function of $bx$ is to suppress the MS pathway. If $bx$ is mutated ($bx^-$), a MS-repressor cannot be produced in the AMT segment.
14.5. EXPECTED PHENOTYPES OF THE BITHORAX COMPLEX

Figure 14.6: The phenotypes of the mutants of the Bithorax gene complex (BX-C, Lewis, 1963, 1964, 1978) of *Drosophila*, their arrangement on the third chromosome and the normal function according to the model proposed. Abnormal structures are drawn with heavy lines. The arrows in the scheme below indicate the proposed transcription of the BX-C as function of the segmental and compartmental specifications. In the posterior state, the termination of transcription results from a posterior transcriptional block (PB). Mutation of the PB-sites (Cbx and Hab) can change the extent of transcription.

Figure 14.7: Types of transformation expected from the model and observed in mutations of the Bithorax gene complex. (a,b) The posterior block does not work; the transition into the next posterior segment specification occurs already at the A-P transition. The segmental specificity is extended into the more anteriorly located segment. Corresponding phenotypes are *Cbx* (a) and *Hab* (b). (c) The activation of the next following control gene does not work correctly; the same segmental specification is repeated in the posteriorly located segment. This is the phenotype of *bxd*. (Important is in this context the formation of a fourth pair of leg. The PMT-PMS transformation results from a particular arrangement of the loci on the chromosome.) (d) The correct control gene is activated in the correct region but the previously active gene is not suppressed. An example is *pbx*. Note that this is not an extension of a particular specification into a neighboring segment.
The AMT segment receives AMS character despite that the correct control gene is activated ("last door left open"). In contrast, in a Cbx mutation, the bx gene is already transcribed in the PMS segment, the MS repressor becomes produced and a PMS-PMT transformation occurs. With these assignments, the phenotypes of Cbx− and bx− are explained.

After an A-P transition in the MT segment, the Cbx-bx transcription is blocked again at the Cbx region. A second coding region for the MS repressor, transcribed in the PMS segment, is required. This is assumed to be the pbx region. A pbx mutation therefore leads to an PMT-PMS transformation. The transcription of the pbx gene is assumed to start in the bxd region. A mutation in the bxd region leads therefore to a loss of function of a pbx+ gene (Fig.14.6, 14.7). In the PMT region, the activation of control genes responsible for abdominal (AB) structures must be prepared. In PMT, the transcription is assumed to proceed from bxd via pbx towards AB-genes. However, in the PMT region the transcription of the AB genes is blocked by a second posterior block at the Hab region. In Hab− flies, this block fails and abdominal genes are already activated in the PMT leading to a loss of the haltere and of the third pair of legs. Since Hab− is of the “broken door type”, it is dominant. In contrast, bxd is required to activate the AB genes; bxd− is therefore of the recessive “broken door bell” type and leads to an repetition of thoracic structures in the first abdominal segment. In pbx−, the correct control gene is activated but the product, the MS repressor, does not work; pbx− is therefore of the type “last door left open”. The gating mechanism is especially obvious in this part of the BX-C since the control genes are arranged on the chromosome in the same order as the corresponding structures in the real organism.

The model describes also the behavior of double mutants. For instance, a fly carrying a Cbx and a pbx mutation shows a pure Cbx phenotype. It does not matter whether pbx is mutated or not. The defects are not additive. According to the model, due to the Cbx mutation, the MS repressor coding region at bx is also transcribed in the PMT region and the MS pathway is suppressed independent of pbx. This double mutation suggests that the bx+ region is not a specific “selector gene” (Garcia-Bellido, 1975) for the AMT pathway but that it codes for a general MS repressor. The influence of the bx mutation is usually restricted to the AMT since, according to the model, bx is only transcribed there. The Cbx mutation is known to be an inverted insertion of the pbx region. I presume however that the mutant phenotype results not from this copy but from a destruction of a transcriptional block by this insertion.

The phenotype of double mutations frequently depends on whether the two mutations are located on the same chromosome (cis) or on different chromosomes (trans) and these differences are also correctly described by the model. For instance, if a bx and a Cbx or a Ubx and a Cbx mutations are located on the same chromosome (cis), the phenotypes are almost wildtype although Cbx alone would be dominant. According to the model, if the transcription cannot start (Ubx−) or the product is bad (bx−) it does not matter whether the posterior block at Cbx works or not. In contrast, if bx− and Cbx− or Ubx− and Cbx− are located
on different chromosomes (trans), on one chromosome the transcription starts correctly ($Ubx^+$), it is not blocked in the PMS segment ($Cbx^-$) and the product ($bx^+$) is good. The normal $Cbx^-$ phenotype results. Or, if $bxd^-$ and $pbx^-$ are in cis, the other chromosome can take over all functions and the phenotype is wildtype. In trans, the transcription cannot start on one chromosome ($bxd^-$) while, on the other, the product is bad ($pbx^-$) and a $pbx^-$ phenotype results, in agreement with the experimental findings (Lewis, 1963, 1964).

If, due to a chromosomal deletion, the BX-C is completely absent, the MT and all abdominal segments are of MS character (Lewis, 1978). In terms of the model, if the chain of sequential activation of control genes is interrupted at one step, the following genes in the sequence can be no longer activated. This does not mean that the BX-C genes are active in the abdominal segments. The activation of the BX-C can be a transient but necessary step in the activation of genes controlling abdominal structures.

The model allows to understand other experimental observations it was not intended to explain. A striking asymmetry occurs in the regeneration of compartmental specificities. An anterior leg compartment can regenerate the posterior compartment but the reverse regeneration occurs much less frequently if at all (Schubiger and Schubiger, 1978). A similar asymmetry has been reported by Kauffman and Ling (1981) for the wing. In terms of the model, an A-P transition will occur whenever the stabilizing influence of the P region on the A state becomes too low. In contrast, a P-A transition would require the driving force of the morphogen and is therefore less likely to occur in an isolated disk fragment.

The assignment of very specific functions to the BX-C is necessarily speculative. Modifications are expected from a more complete understanding about how the segmentation proper is controlled (see below). Corrections may become necessary with the determination of the DNA sequence of the gene complex. It is hoped, however, that the general principle, the sequential activation of control genes by the alternation between two states, holds and facilitates an understanding of the information obtained from the sequencing of the DNA.

### 14.6 Sequential addition of new units at a zone of marginal growth

In some insects, only a fraction of the segments is formed directly. Then, in a second step, pattern formation is completed by adding new segments at a zone of marginal growth. The number of elements formed during the first or second phase is very different in different species (Krause, 1939). For instance, in *Euscelis* (Sander, 1976), only very few abdominal segments are added by growth, and the pattern formation can be essentially described as under the control of a morphogen gradient (see Fig.8.2 and 8.7). In contrast, in crickets (Fig.14.8), most of the segments are formed by marginal growth. Thus, some insects are organized by morphogen gradients during an essential non-growing period while others during a period of substantial growth. Smooth transitions exist between
The chapter discusses the formation of a sequential and periodic structure by marginal outgrowth. Figure 14.8 provides a biological example: a stained germ band of a cricket. At an early stage, only the head lobe is separated. Later, head segments producing mouth parts, the three thoracic segments with leg buds, and three abdominal segments are formed. More abdominal segments will be formed in a sprouting-like process from the not yet segmented area E. A computer program for this simulation is provided in chapter 17.

Another pattern which is formed during marginal growth is the proximo-distal pattern of a vertebrate limb. Summerbell et al. (1973) proposed a progress-zone model according to which the dividing cells at the growing tip count the number of cell divisions and acquire a more posterior positional value. Cells leaving this zone of cell division maintain their once obtained positional value. On principle, such pattern formation can be described by the gating model. The primary subdivision would not be the subdivision in the sequential structure (Humerus, Ulna etc.) but in a periodic structure (for instance, bone, joint, bone... or proximal, distal, proximal... part of a bone). Coupled to each switch from one state to the other, a new specification in the sequential pattern is determined. However, the pattern regulation after removal of internal structures in the amphibian leg indicates that...
14.7. THE FORMATION OF SOMITES

A very important step in the antero-posterior organization of vertebrates is the formation of somites which give rise to the axial skeleton and musculature during further development. The paired somites are derived from two stripes of mesodermal tissue by a sequential separation into groups of cells. The separation progresses from anterior towards posterior. The periodic nature of somites is obvious (Fig.14.9). Similar to the thoracic segments of insects, each somite seems to be subdivided into (at least) an anterior and a posterior portion since cells originating from the posterior half of one somite together with cells from the anterior half of the next somite form one vertebrae (Fig.14.9c). Presumably the somites are also different from each other since the vertebrae arising in this process are different from each other. Particular vertebrae form ribs while other do not.

Many experimental observations have provided insights into how the formation of somites is controlled. In amphibians, the first ca. 20 somites are formed by a grouping of existent cells. Later, a graded transition to a more progress-zone like addition of new somites in a region of cell proliferation in the tail bud occurs (Cooke, 1975a). The mode of segmentation is therefore similar to that in insects discussed above. Although the first somites appear long before the last somites, the size of the somites is regulated in such a way that the number of somites is almost constant and independent of the size of the embryo at the blastula stage. For amphibians, Cooke (1981b) has shown that only the first anterior somites (about 20) are size-regulated while the more posterior somites are always smaller but independent of the size of the embryo. The actual determination of the somites occurs earlier than their morphological appearance. Both

Figure 14.9: Formation of somites and vertebrae. Somites are formed by clustering of cells. It starts at the anterior side, behind the head lobe and proceeds in posterior direction. (a) A chicken embryo at about 25 h of incubation. 5 somites are visible. (b) Ten hours later, 12 somites are present. (c) The anterior and the posterior part of each somite appear to be different. For the formation of vertebrae, cells from the anterior part migrate in anterior direction while cells from the posterior part migrate in posterior direction. Thus, cells from two different somites form together one vertebra (redrawn after Patten, 1958).

position information is involved in the leg system (see Fig.11.9b,e).

14.7 The formation of somites
processes can be experimentally distinguished by short heat shocks. In *Xenopus*, such a heat shock leads to defects of those somites which are formed at least 10 h later. Meanwhile, five normal somite appear. This indicates that the (heat-sensitive) determination of somites precedes their appearance by approximately 10 hours. An important question is whether the determination or the morphological separation of a particular somite require an inductive trigger from the previously formed anterior somite(s). Such a sequential trigger would explain the wave-like spreading of somite formation. This question has been answered by removing fragments from the posterior part of an amphibian embryo at the neurula stage. In this stage, the somites are neither determined nor visible. The surprising result is that in such fragments, the formation of somites takes place in the same sequence and at the same time as in the unoperated embryos. This indicates that the formation of one somite does not require its previously formed anterior neighbor. The actual somite formation occurs after a count-down-like process (Deuchar and Burgess, 1967; Pearson and Elsdale, 1979). However, in the heat shock experiments mentioned above, the number of malformed somites is much higher than expected from the shortness of the heat shock. Taking both observations together, the time at which the separation of the somites becomes determined and morphologically manifest seems to be cell-internally encoded. In the generation of fine structure, however, a neighboring interaction seems to play an essential role in such a way that an irregular shape or a fusion of some somites has an influence on the successively formed somites. It requires the formation of several somites until the once evoked disturbance is smoothed out.

In summary, a model which should account for somitogenesis must have the following features: (i) A periodic structure is formed in an anterior to posterior order. (ii) The individual somites formed in this process are different from each other. (iii) Each somite is subdivided (at least) in an anterior and posterior part. (iv) The size of the first anterior somites is controlled in relation to the total size of the embryo, the more posterior somites are of constant size. (v) The time at which the separation of somites occur is cell-internally determined. (iv) Neighboring interactions play a role in the generation of the fine structure.

With minor modifications, the model for compartmentalization and specification in insects discussed above has all these properties. Cooke and Zeeman (1976) proposed a model for somite formation in which an oscillator gates a wavefront. In the model I propose, the oscillator (alternating between A and P), the wave front (separating stable and oscillating cells) as well as the spatial periodic pattern (of A and P) results from one and the same mechanism. In addition, the model I propose accounts for a different determination of the individual somites. As in insects, the oscillation seems to be under the control of a gradient with increasing concentration towards the posterior end of the organism. In vertebrates, this gradient appears to be relatively stable since the local values remain unchanged after isolation of fragments. The absolute level of this gradient would determine after which time or, more precisely, after how many A-P-A transitions a stable boundary can be formed (Fig. 14.10). The formation of such stable boundary is assumed to correspond to the somite determination as discussed above.
14.8. THE PROBLEM OF SEGMENTATION

Figure 14.10: The gating mechanism as a model for somite determination. The same mechanism as in Figs. 14.4 and 14.5 is assumed. (a,b) A gradient with the same concentration range leads to a sequential and periodic pattern which is, within some limits, independent of the total size of the field. The upper subpictures show the assumed positional information, the central figure shows the oscillation between “A” (:::) and “P” (xx) and the formation of a stable periodic A-P-A pattern. The broken lines mark the transition from the oscillating into the stable state and indicate, therefore, the moment of somite determination as function of time and position. The lower subpicture shows the final pattern of gene activities. A square indicates that the corresponding cell is in the P-state. The time required to form a somite does not depend on the size of a somite but on the A-P oscillation frequency. (c) A posterior fragment; no area of low positional information is present. The first A-P boundary can be formed only after a certain number of synchronous oscillation and switches to higher “genes”. Separation into somites occurs therefore later, at the time corresponding to the local positional information (for computer simulations see chapter 17).

The steepness of this gradient would determine the size of the individual somites. (How a size-regulated gradient can be formed has been discussed above, Fig.7.1.) If an increase of the threshold for the next P-A transition occurs only with the determination of the first (ca. 20) somites, only these first somites will adapt to the steepness of the gradient. The activation of different control genes may be required only for the more anterior somites since they have to form structures with more individuality like ribs while the more posterior somites which forms the tail may be more or less identical. If the threshold is not increased, the A-P-A pattern is formed at the smallest possible distance. The simulations in Fig.14.10 show the adaptation of the number of somites to different sizes of the field and that the somite formation can proceed normal in a posterior fragment.

14.8 The problem of segmentation

As an open problem remains the question what is the signal to form a border between two segments or the cleft between two somites? Our assumption was that each of these repetitive substructures consists of an A and a P part. A
segment border coincides with a P-A border. However, a juxtaposition of A and P cells cannot be the signal to form a segment border (or a cleft), since a second A-P confrontation is present in the center of each segment, without a segment border being induced. Even if a pair of A-P stripes always has to form a segment, the grouping of a sequence APAPAP would be ambiguous; either AP/AP/AP... or A/PA/PA/P... would be possible. The internal polarity within the segment would not be determined. In insects segment border coincides with a P-A border. However, a juxtaposition of A and P cells cannot be the signal to form a segment border (or a cleft) since a second A-P confrontation is present in the center of each segment, without a segment border being induced. Even if a pair of A-P stripes always has to form a segment, the grouping of a sequence APAPAP would be ambiguous either AP/AP/AP... or A/PA/PA/P... would be possible. The internal polarity within the segment would not be determined.

The Bithorax gene complex has provided us with very important insights how segmentation is not controlled. As mentioned, several mutations (Fig.14.3) cause the specification of a particular segment to extend into a neighboring segment. The segment border no longer coincides with the transition from one segmental specification to the next. In other words, a transition from one segmental specification to the next, for instance from mesothoracic to metathoracic specification, can occur within a segment without a segment border being induced. We have to conclude that a segment border is not induced by a transition from one segmental specification to the next. After a complete deletion of the Bithorax complex, the metathoracic and all abdominal segments have mesothoracic specificity. However, the total number of segments remain unchanged. Thus, segmentation proceeds independently of whether the segments are different from each other or not. An assumption that more and more segments are added until the last abdominal segment is present is obviously incompatible with this observation. Counting of segments and giving them individual specifications are two different processes.

If neither the transition from one segmental specification to the next nor the P-A confrontation is the signal to form a segment boundary the question remains: what is the signal? One solution of this problem could be that the primary building blocks of a segment or a somite are not two states, A and P but three, for instance A, P and S (segment border). The primary periodic pattern formation would lead to an ...APSAPS... sequence which allows a segmentation either of the type .../APS/APS/... or .../SAP/SAP/..., depending whether S/A or P/S induces a border. The advantage of having a subdivision into three parts is twofold. On one hand, the determination of the segment border is unequivocal, for instance SAP/SAP/... Secondly, the internal polarity of the segment is well-defined. No other grouping is possible. The sequences /SAP/ and /PAS/ have opposite polarities. We have seen in chapter 12 and 13 how several structures in a sequence can be stabilized. The basic principle was that different states, for instance S, A and P, exclude each other locally but stabilize each other on long range. For instance, on long range S supports A, A supports P and P supports S and/or vice versa. This leads to a repetitive SAPSAP... pattern.

A direct evidence for three such building blocks of a segment is not yet avail-
able but several experimental observation would find a straightforward expla-
nation under this assumption. Nüsslein-Volhard and Wieschaus (1980) found
a mutation in Drosophila in which twice as many segment borders are formed
and in which the internal organization of the segments appears to be symmetric.
Such a phenotype is expected if the central state is affected by the mutation.
For instance, a /SAP/ pattern would lead, if the state A is affected, to a pat-
tern /S/P/S/P/. Further, if an anterior and a posterior part of an abdominal
segment of a bug is juxtaposed, a new segment boundary is formed (Wright and
Lawrence, 1981a,b). The same happens after removal of a large internal part of
a leg segment (French, 1976a). In the model, if the A area is removed from an
/SAP/ sequence, the newly formed SP confrontation would induce a new bound-
ary. The fact that a threefold subdivision has not yet found is not an argument
against this possibility. The A-P subdivision in the thoracic segments has been
discovered due to the clonal restriction. However, the sharp AP boundary in the
thoracic segments may be more the exception than the rule and required solely
to define the cordinate system for appendages (chapter 9). No clonal restriction
is necessarily present between the other states. To the contrary, some diffusion
facilitates the size regulation of the individual elements (see Fig.12.6) and in the
abdominal segments, no compartments have been found (Lawrence et al., 1978).

An open problem is further how the precise number of segments is controlled.
The formation of the segments must be under the control of the primary gradient
since the shallower gradient in double abdomen embryos (Fig.8.5, 8.3) or in ligated
eggs (Fig.8.7) leads to fewer segments. A key observation are mutants in which
each second segment is skipped, either the even numbered or the odd numbered
(Nüsslein-Volhard and Wieschaus, 1980; Sander et al., 1980). A coherent model
for this phenomenon is still missing.

14.9 Stepwise modification under the influence of A-P-A
alternations

The activation of a next control gene under the influence of a P-A transition
is only one of several possibilities. The Bithorax complex indicates that this
possibility is realized in the insect system. We do not know how general this
mechanism of activating particular control genes really is. Another possibility
would be a systematic modification, for instance by a somatic processing of par-
ticular DNA or RNA sequences. The alternation between P-A-P... could control
the occurrence and the spatial distance of the modifications. The signal “modify”
may require a simultaneous high A and P concentration. Only during the very
short period of transition between A and P are both states active within the same
cell since the states A and P mutually exclude each other. If an A-specific and
a P-specific enzyme have to be present simultaneously to accomplish a partic-
ular biochemical step, this can take place only in the short phase of transition.
A homeostatic maintenance of the once attained state would result since, after
completion of the pattern, the cell would remain stably in one of the states and
transitions would no longer occur.

14.10 The advantage of having a superposition of periodic and sequential structures

The model provides an explanation about how periodic and sequential structure can be formed. The gating and counting mechanism provides a mechanism to produce a large number of similar but different structures. Due to the superposition of the two patterns, the precision by which the morphogen concentration has to be measured is much reduced since the fine structure and correct neighborhood emerges under the control of the periodic pattern with its higher spatial resolution. The compartments formed in this process are not only involved in gating the control genes. By cooperation of compartments, the A-P pattern can determine the position and orientation of appendages (chapter 9). Alternatively the A- and P-stripes may act as the terminal structures within abdominal segments and the missing structures are filled in by intercalation (chapter 13). In any case, the superposition of both the periodic and sequential structure provides preconditions for making a reliable finer subdivision of a developing organism.
Chapter 15

Formation of net-like structures

Net-like structures are common in almost every higher organism. The vascular system, the lymphatic system, the nervous system, the tracheae of insects, the veins of leaves and those of insect wings are examples (Fig.15.1). Such net-like structures can be used to supply a tissue with nutritional substances, such as oxygen and water. The filamentous elements of a net consist of either linearly arranged, differentiated cells or of long fibers formed out of single cells. Filaments can provide information or mechanical stability and they can be used to remove certain substances from an area. A net-like structure with all its ramifications is certainly not formed by the interpretation of positional information. This would require an enormous number of threshold values in each cell. Moreover, in many net systems, regulatory processes have been observed. For instance, new tracheae grow into a field of artificially evoked oxygen deficiency (Wigglesworth, 1954). Kühn (1948) found a mutant insect with a missing vein in the wing. The remaining veins were rearranged to compensate for the missing vein; there was no large gap in the pattern. Some substances are known to have an influence on the formation of a net: the plant hormone auxin in leaves (Jost, 1942), the nerve growth factor (Levi-Montalcini, 1964) on adrenergic nerves, a tumor angiogenesis factor (Folkmann, et al., 1971, Folkman, 1976) on blood vessels. These findings indicate that elongation and branching are locally controlled processes. The question remains, as to what biochemical interactions govern the formation of elongated structures. How, for instance, can the elongation of a nerve be directed towards a particular target area? How is the very small surface area selected in which a new branch is initiated? Or, as in the case of leaves, how can the differentiation of cells into members of the vascular system proceed along a line, such that a certain distance from other vascular elements is maintained? How are these processes encoded in the genes?

The model I have proposed for the generation of net-like structures (Meinhardt, 1976) is based on the repetition of two steps: (i) localization of the elongation of a filament, and (ii) the elongation itself. The localization can be achieved by pattern formation based on short range activation coupled with long range inhibition, as described above. In regard to the orientation of elongation, let us assume that it is the purpose of a net to remove some substrate such as auxin or
nerve growth factor from its surroundings. It could also be the remedy of some deficiency, such as the supply of oxygen mediated by insect tracheae. If autocatalysis depends on this substrate, the elongation will be oriented towards the increasing substrate concentration. The local high signal concentration causes an elongation of the filament which, in turn, causes a shift of the signal. Long filaments are formed as a trail behind a wandering filament-inducing signal. The mechanism will be explained in some detail for the special case in which filaments are formed by ordered differentiation, within a field of undifferentiated cells. A generalization will be given later.

15.1 Formation of a filament

We wish to translate this idea into a mathematical model which can be interpreted on a molecular basis. We have to supplement the activator-inhibitor mechanism with a description of the differentiation process and a mechanism for the activator shift. We have seen (Eq.3.2) that a sharp local maximum can be generated by the interaction of an activator $a$ and an inhibitor $h$

$$\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = \frac{ca^2s}{h} - \mu a + D_a\Delta a + \rho_0 y$$  \hspace{1cm} (15.1a)

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} = ca^2s - \nu h + D_h\Delta h + \rho_1 y$$  \hspace{1cm} (15.1b)

or

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial t} = ca^2 - \nu h + D_h\Delta h$$  \hspace{1cm} (15.2b')

(The new terms $s$, $\rho_0 y$ and $\rho_1 y$ will be explained below; $D_a\Delta a$ and $D_h\Delta h$ denote the generalized diffusion terms for more than one dimension.) The local high activator concentration would be the signal for a cell to differentiate, i.e., to switch irreversibly from one state to another. The state of differentiation can
15.1. FORMATION OF A FILAMENT

Figure 15.2: Formation of a filament by differentiated cells and the initiation of a branch. By the interaction of an activator \(a\), upper row) and an inhibitor \(h\) a local high activator concentration is formed (a-b) which is used as a signal to differentiate the corresponding cell (c) (switching \(y\) from low to high concentration). The differentiated cell removes the substrate \(s\) which is produced everywhere. The high activator production, assumed to depend on \(s\), escapes from the \(s\)-depression and is shifted to a neighboring cell which is thereupon also differentiated. Indefinitely long filaments of differentiated cells can be formed by repetition of these steps. If the growing tip of the filament becomes sufficiently remote and enough space is available, the basic activator production of the differentiated cells can trigger a new activator maximum (f,g), which initiates a new branch. A computer program for such a simulation is given in chapter 17.

be determined by the substance \(y\); the concentration of \(y\) would be low in the undifferentiated state and high in the differentiated state. The transition from low to high concentration under the influence of the activator can occur in the following way. The activator produces \(y\), but \(y\) also has a positive feedback on itself, which saturates at high \(y\) concentrations.

\[
\frac{\partial y}{\partial t} = da - ey + y^2/(1 + fy^2) \tag{15.1c}
\]

If, under the influence of the activator, a certain \(y\) concentration is attained, further increase of \(y\) is independent of the activator (see Eq.11.1; Fig.11.1).

To get a filament, we have to arrange for the maximum to be shifted into a neighboring cell. Let us assume that the purpose of the net is removal of a substrate \(s\). Substance \(s\) is produced everywhere in the tissue at a rate \(c_0\) and is removed by the differentiated cells at a rate \(sy\), while production of the activator depends on this substance \(s\) (Eq.15.1a).

\[
\frac{\partial s}{\partial t} = c_0 - \gamma s - \epsilon sy + D_s \Delta s \tag{15.1d}
\]

Around each differentiated cell a depression in the \(s\) concentration will develop, but the \(s\) concentration increases steeply in neighboring undifferentiated cells. In a newly differentiated cell, the \(s\) concentration decreases, slowing down activator autocatalysis. Activator diffusion into neighboring cells can trigger a new activator maximum there due to the higher \(s\)-concentration. Due to mutual competition, only one of the neighboring cells will develop a new maximum.
and even the previously active cell will be inhibited. The result is a shift of the activator maximum into a neighboring cell which subsequently becomes differentiated itself. The next cell to be activated will be the one in front of the tip of this incipient filament. It is the adjacent cell with the highest \(s\)-concentration, because it has the least contact with the \(s\)-removing differentiated cells. By repetition of this process - shift of the signal, differentiation and shift again - long filaments of differentiated cells can be formed (Fig.15.2). The structures which can be generated by this simple mechanism have features similar to those of biological networks. For example, bifurcations and lateral branches can be formed, the density of filaments can be regulated according to local demand, filaments can be oriented towards a target area and a damaged net can be repaired.

15.2 Formation of lateral branches

To form a net, individual filaments have to branch repetitively. A branch can be formed either by bifurcation at the growing tip or by the formation of a new growth point along an existing filament. According to the model, as the length of a filament increases, inhibition arising mainly from the high activator concentration at the growing tip may no longer be sufficient to suppress the basic (activator-independent, \(a\) in Eq.15.1a, Fig.15.2g) activator production of the cells of the filament. By autocatalysis, a new activator maximum may be formed along the filament, but, since the concentration of \(s\) is higher in the environment of the filament, the activator maximum is immediately shifted to a cell at the side of the filament and a branch is initiated.

15.3 Limitation of maximum net density

Net density will increase, since any branch can give rise to other branches. The ultimate net density can be controlled in two ways. In the first case, suppose the activator, but not the inhibitor, is dependent on the concentration of \(s\). Then, as net density increases both the average \(s\) concentration and the maximum activator concentration decrease. Once a certain net density is reached, the activator maximum will be too low to induce further cell differentiation. The final net density will be proportional to the local production of \(s\); net density will increase as long as more of the substance to be removed is present (see Fig.15.8). This model may apply to the growth of tracheae into a region of experimentally induced oxygen deficiency (Wigglesworth, 1954). Alternatively, if production of both the activator and the inhibitor are dependent on \(s\) (Eq.15.1b), then elongation and branching will be independent of the absolute \(s\) concentration. Here, final net density can be controlled by production of a basic inhibitor by the differentiated cells (\(\rho_1 y\) in Eq.15.1b). This creates a background inhibitor concentration in proportion to local net density. Filament elongation or the formation of new branches will cease if activator production is suppressed when the background inhibitor concentration rises above a certain level. This type of regulation leads
15.4 FINDING A TARGET CELL

According to the theory proposed here, elongation proceeds in the direction of the highest concentration of s. In the case of homogeneous s-production, that is usually located in front of the filament tip. If, on the contrary, the substance s is produced only in a particular area, the filament will follow the resulting gradient in s concentration upwards to the target area.

15.5 Regeneration of a net

Destruction of a filament of a net frequently leads to branching of nearby filaments, which repair the damage. Wigglesworth (1954), for instance, cut a trachea which supplied a particular segment of a bug with oxygen. Tracheae from neighboring segments subsequently migrated across the segment border (Fig. 15.3) and maintained the oxygen supply. The proposed model reproduces this regenerative capability. In an area without filaments, s is no longer removed. The increasing s concentration attracts new branches (Fig. 15.3) and the damage is repaired.
CHAPTER 15. FORMATION OF NET-LIKE STRUCTURES

Figure 15.4: Avoidance orientation and the formation of reconnections. The basic principle of the proposed model of line formation consists of repulsion between the differentiated cells and the differentiation-inducing signal. The elongation of a filament will be oriented away from other filaments into the largest available free space. (a) A record of this avoidance reaction can be seen in this maple leaf. However, reconnections (anastomosis) between veins are also possible. (b) According to the model, two growing tips (arrow heads) show a strong mutual repulsion, whereas the repulsion which an existing filament exerts onto a growing tip is more moderate. Connections are possible as the strong withdrawing movement (dashed lines) of two growing tips overrides the weaker repulsion arising from an existing filament. The number of reconnection depends therefore on the repulsion of an existing line and of how strong the tendency is to make a line straight.

15.6 Formation of reconnections

In leaves most of the finer veins end blindly, but some of them connect with other veins to form closed loops (anastomosis). In the model, filament elongation is directed towards the largest available unfilamented space; a growing filament will therefore keep its distance from existing ones. A result of this mutual avoidance during growth can be seen in the final pattern of a leaf (Fig.15.4a). Under the model, this repulsion results from two different inhibitory factors on activator production. The inhibitor centered around a growing tip and used to keep the activator localized is a very strong factor. A weaker factor results from the depletion of the substance along an existing filament, which provides the stimulus for the shift of the activator peak away from the differentiated cells. A growing tip is strongly repelled by another growing tip, but it is only much more weakly repelled by an existing filament. This disparity in repulsive forces allows the avoidance mechanism occasionally to be overcome. Thus, when the weaker repulsion of an existing filament is overcome by the stronger mutual repulsion of two growing tips, reconnection of filaments is made possible. An example of such a reconnection is sketched in Fig.15.4b.

According to Avary (1933), reconnections in the tobacco leaf are formed only after the transition in terms of marginal to intercalary growth. That is understandable from the model since, during intercalary growth, two activator peaks can arise quite close together. As they develop more fully, strong repulsion will result from the increasing influence of their mutual inhibitors. They can thus be forced to elongate in directions that bring them into contact with other, older filaments. The midvein and the main lateral branches are formed before intercalary growth begins, which explains why it is only branches of higher order that usually form reconnections. For a complete description of plant venation, one has to take into account that the veins not only remove the auxin from the sur-
15.7 VARIATION IN PATTERN FORMATION

Figure 15.5: Influence of random fluctuation on pattern formation. (a) Two leaves of the same tree. Their pattern formation is presumably controlled by the same genetic information. Nevertheless, the pattern is only similar, not identical. (b-d) and (e-g) Two simulations with the same parameters and the same initial condition but with different random fluctuation (3%) in the constant c, Eq.15.1a,b. The model reaction determines only properties of the overall pattern such as average net density. Fine details are influenced by small local differences.

...rounding tissue but that they transport it in a polar fashion towards the roots. In a young crossvein, the polarity of the active transport is not completely fixed. Different parts of a vein can pump towards each other (Sachs, 1975). This would lead to local accumulations of auxin which, in turn, attracts other veins leading also to reconnections. The active transport of auxin itself seems to be also an autocatalytic process (Hertel and Flory, 1968). Mitchison (1980) has proposed a model for leaf venation which is based essentially on the transport of auxin.

The mode of reconnection described in Fig.15.4 is only possible in a two-dimensional system. If a third dimension is available, the deflected filament would avoid the existing branches by passing underneath or above. Three-dimensional networks consisting of only one cell type, such as tracheae or lymph capillaries, usually end blindly. Extensive reconnections in three dimensions are possible, however, if two cell types are involved, as in the case of veins and arteries. Each cell type can form its own network by the repulsive interaction described above. Growth of the capillaries towards one other can occur if one cell type produces a substance which accelerates the activator production of the other cell type.

15.7 Variation in pattern formation

In the model, very complex patterns can be generated by the interactions of very few substances. These interactions can easily be encoded by genes. The question may arise as to how reproducible such patterns would be. The parameters determine only the general features of the pattern, such as average net density, the distance between branching points or the straightness of the lines. The fine details depend on external influences or even on random variations. For instance, during the initiation of a new branch, small differences between two neighboring sites determine to which site the activator maximum will escape and therefore...
CHAPTER 15. FORMATION OF NET-LIKE STRUCTURES

Figure 15.6: Simulation of a dichotomously branching leaf pattern. The simple dichotomous leaf pattern shows only bifurcation of the growing veins, without later lateral branching. Such a pattern can be seen in the Ginkgo and some ferns (Fig 15.7). Its simulation requires only two controlling substances. Local high activator ($a$, top row) concentration is formed by autocatalysis. Inhibitory action results from the depletion of the substrate $s$ (a,b). The local high activator concentration irreversibly differentiates (b) the corresponding cells (switching $y$ from low to high concentrations). Since the differentiated cells also remove the substrate, the activator maximum wanders away from the differentiated cells (c). If enough free space is available, the activator maximum can split (see also 5.1), leading to a bifurcation (d-e).

toward which site the new branch will grow. In a leaf, for instance, it does not matter whether the first branch leads to the left or to the right. Usually, such details are insignificant and can arise at random. However, once a branch has been made, let us say to the left, the resulting asymmetry strongly influences subsequent branching. Due to the presence of the new branch, the concentration of $s$ will drop on the left site and the next branch will extend to the right, and so on. Since each decision depends to such an extent on the previous one, the overall pattern is reproducible. The random element in the process of pattern formation implies that two patterns generated by the same mechanism will be similar but not identical. This can be observed in nature. For example, leaves from the same tree are not identical, even though they are surely developed under the control of the same genetic information. Similarly, the details of neuronal branching differ among genetically identical individuals of the water flea Daphnia (Macagno et al., 1973). In Fig.15.5, two simulations are provided, starting with the same initial condition but allowing different random fluctuations. The resulting patterns are similar but not identical.

15.8 Formation of a dichotomous branching pattern

One may ask whether this mechanism of line formation is the simplest possible. It is not. In this model, two inhibitory actions are involved in line formation,
15.8. FORMATION OF A DICHOTOMOUS BRANCHING PATTERN

Figure 15.7: Comparison of branching patterns of leaves with their simulations. (a) An evolutionarily older form of branching is dichotomous, such that a growing line can split into two, but lateral branching is not possible. (b) A simulation of dichotomous branching is possible under the assumption of only two controlling substances (see Fig. 15.6), in which the forking pattern is reproduced. (c) Lateral branching in a leaf of Fittonia verschaffelti; by a caprice of nature, the major veins appear white. (d) In the simulation initially one differentiated cell was assumed to be present (arrow). The first vein is oriented towards the largest available space, in the diagonal. The first lateral branches try to grow out at 90° but are repelled by the margins and establish, therefore, an angle of 45° with the midvein (see Fig. 15.2). The following lateral branches are repelled by the first and appear, therefore, also at 45° but branches of higher order grow out at 90°. The margins are avoided since the inhibitor cannot diffuse past the margin; it is, therefore, accumulated here. Reconnections are occasionally possible between higher order branches. Whereas the main lateral branches are quite straight, the higher order branches are more curved since they are frequently deflected by other growing tips. The simulation of a leaf with 29x29 cells can be only a crude approximation of the reality (even such a relatively simple simulation requires 28 h on a relatively fast PTP 11/40 computer). Nonetheless, it does demonstrate that such a complex pattern can be formed by the interaction of only a few substances.

one to localize activation at the growing tip, and the other to determine the direction in which the center of activation will migrate. As discussed in chapter 5, the inhibitor may be replaced by a substrate which is depleted during activator production. Therefore, both tasks, the formation and the shift of the activator peak, can be mediated by one and the same substances. Including the activator, only two substances would be sufficient to control differentiation (Eq.15.2).

\[
\frac{\partial a}{\partial t} = ca^2 s - \mu a + D_a \Delta a \\
(15.2a)
\]

\[
\frac{\partial s}{\partial t} = c_0 - ca^2 s - \gamma s - \epsilon sy + D_s \Delta s \\
(15.2b)
\]
\[
\frac{\partial y}{\partial t} = da - ey + \frac{y^2}{1 + fy^2}
\] (15.2c)

A pattern formed according to this interaction is given in Fig.15.6. The main difference from the pattern formation discussed above is that here lateral branching is not possible. To provide sufficient drive, the differentiated cells have to remove such a substantial amount of \(s\) that the formation of secondary activator peaks along an existing filament is no longer possible. The activator maximum at the growing tip can still divide into two maxima, allowing binary fission of an extending filament. It seems that this is the evolutionarily older dichotomous branching pattern of leaf vascularization which can still be seen in the leaves of some ferns and the Ginkgo tree. If this view is correct, the evolutionary step from the dichotomous (Fig.15.7a) to the common leaf pattern (Fig.15.7b) would involve separation of the two inhibitory effects by the “invention” of a separate inhibitory substance. The evolutionary advantage of lateral branching is that it opens the possibility for intercalary growth. New branches can be extended into the expanding spaces, providing necessary nourishment to the tissue. In addition, damage to any particular vein is less disruptive to the tissue as a whole, since the network has closed loops and other pathways are available.

15.9 Filaments formed by oriented cell division or by extensions of single cells

Elongation of a line by accretion of newly formed, differentiated cells is only one of several possible modes of line formation that can be simulated under the proposed theory. The high activator concentration at the filament tip could control cell division, while activator increase in front of the tip could orient the process. In this case, a network is formed by organized proliferation of the constituent cells.

In both the nervous system and the tracheal system, the elements of the filaments consist of highly extended single cells. The formation of such a net can be explained by the model, under the assumption that a local high activator concentration is formed on the cell surface. This can act as a stimulus for the expansion of pseudopodes and the formation of a growth cone. As in the orientation of a chemotactic sensitive cell (see Fig.5.6), the precise localization of the activator peak during the fiber elongation is facilitated by periodic formation and decay of the signal. Harrison (1910) has shown that the growth of a nerve fiber is not a continuous process but, rather, that phases of fast elongation alternate with phases of searching for a new direction. Several pseudopodes may be sent out at the same time, although most of them will later be retracted.

A closer look at the branching pattern of nerves reveals features similar to those seen in leaves. When the cells branch, the branches are typically at 90°, and individual branches maintain distance from one another. In the growth of a nerve, there again appear to be two types of inhibition involved. The first localizes the growth cone and suppresses the development of additional growth cones in surrounding elements. It also allows the selection of a very small area
where a new branch is actually initiated. The second inhibition results from depletion of the substance, $s$, which is possibly a nerve growth factor. This leads to orientation of each branch away from its neighbors; it is a mechanism for the mutual repulsion of nerve fibers. Genetically identical or similar individuals show the same general pattern of branching, but there are large differences in the fine structure of the branching (Macagno et al., 1973). Of course, nerve cells do more than merely branch toward their targets; they also demonstrate spatial ordering of their connections. Any of the pattern generating mechanisms discussed above can supply the required spatial cues. Such spatial patterning can be used to set up a graded surface property in a field of the nerve cells. Together with the processes of competition and branching here described, this produces models that can generate many of the patterns seen in the retinotectal systems of lower vertebrates (Fraser, 1980; Gierer, 1981b).

15.10 Known substances which influence the formation of nets

As already mentioned, there are several substances known which influence the formation of particular nets. Some have been identified and others have been only partially purified. All these substances are comparable to the proposed
shift- substance $s$, whereas none of the activator-inhibitor type are known. It seems likely that this is because substances of the shift-type $s$ must be constantly produced or present in all the cells into which the filaments should grow. In contrast, the proposed activator-inhibitor substances are produced very locally and possibly only during short time intervals. Further difficulties in observing these substances result from the strong mutual influence of their production rates (see p. [50]).

In leaves, additional vascular elements are formed after application of auxin to an injury (Jost, 1942). Auxin is known to be actively transported from the leaves to the roots. The veins remove auxin from their environment. Similarly, nerve growth factor NGF (Levi-Montalcini, 1964), which is necessary for the outgrowth of adrenergic nerves, is actively transported from filaments to the cell body (see Thoenen and Barde, 1980). The highest NGF-concentration that a particular nerve will encounter is presumably that at its end, since more surface elements are available to remove NGF along a fiber. As long as no other constraints are imposed, this would lead to linear elongation of the fiber. The valley of NGF centered along each fiber would cause fibers of the same type to keep a certain distance from each other. If higher concentrations of NGF were present in a particular area, this area would attract growing fibers. According to the model, NGF and auxin would be co-factors for the activation of fiber elongation, for instance in the formation of a growth cone. The activation itself has to have autocatalytic properties, with an element of lateral inhibition.

The rapid growth of a tumor is only possible if it is extremely well nourished by a plethora of newly formed vessels (Algire et al., 1945). Obviously, a malignant tumor must be able to overcome the body’s control of blood vessel formation. Thus, an understanding of the control of vessel density is of great importance. Folkman et al. (1971) have isolated, from different tumors, a tumor angiogenesis factor (TAF) which induces ingrowth of vessels into normally avascular areas, such as the cornea or the epidermis (Fig.15.8a,b). According to the model, the density of the net can be controlled by the substance $s$. Examples are given in Fig.15.8. Low, medium and high $s$-concentrations lead to corresponding densities of the filaments. These densities may correspond to the situation of an avascular tissue, of a normal tissue and of a tumor. TAF may itself be the substance, or it may induce the synthesis of a substance, which is removed by the vessels and which is a co-factor in the local activation of elongation or the origination of a new branch. On the other hand, Folkman et al. (1971) have isolated a factor from avascular cartilage which suppresses the ingrowth of vessels. This factor could be the proposed inhibitor, since an externally supplied inhibitor can suppress activator production and so suppress elongation and branching, despite the presence of high $s$-concentration (Fig.15.8).
Chapter 16

Summary and conclusion: How to achieve the spatial organization of a developing embryo

Different models have been discussed for particular developmental systems and it may be worthwhile to summarize by showing how these mechanisms may be linked together to allow a reproducible development of an organism.

In the formation of the primary embryonic axis a process must be involved which is able to generate a pattern from more or less homogeneous initial conditions. A reaction in which a short ranging autocatalysis is coupled with a long ranging inhibition is able to generate such a pattern in a very reliable way. This mechanism accounts also for the re-establishment of an “organizing region” after an experimental interference or its unspecific induction. Small asymmetries in the environment of the maturing egg or of the early embryo can orientate the developing embryo in a predictable way. Influences as weak as gravitation (Kochav and Eyal-Giladi, 1971) are sufficient for such an orientation.

If the first pattern is involved to orient, for instance, the antero-posterior axis, a second pattern would be required to organize the dimension perpendicular to the first, for instance, the dorso-ventral dimension. For the developing organism, it is absolutely essential that both patterns are perpendicular to each other (or at least not parallel). This can be accomplished by an appropriate coupling between the two systems, for instance if a border between “dorsal” and “ventral” is the condition to form the most anterior or posterior structure (or vice versa, see Fig. 12.8, 12.9).

Patterns formed by reaction-diffusion mechanisms are necessarily transient since they depend on the size and the geometry of the fields. Both size and geometry change during development. The graded concentration profiles created by reaction-diffusion mechanisms can act as morphogen and provide positional information for the cells. The cells change their (internal) state of determination in a systematic way until it corresponds to the external signal - the local mor-
phogen concentration. This process may be in fact an oscillatory process. The cell may alternate between two states and this allows a “gate”-like transition from one structure-controlling gene to the next. It allows a counting of spatial structures on the gene level. Sequences of similar but not identical structures such as the somites or segments can be formed. Each element of such a sequence is necessarily subdivided into two parts. For instance an insect segment consists from the beginning of an anterior and a posterior compartment.

The determination of adjacent cells into different developmental pathways implies that borders are formed. Such borders enable further “fine”-structuring. Different cells on both sides of the border may co-operate through substances diffusing across the border, to produce together new morphogen molecules. The highest concentration is centred over the common boundary and the local concentration is a measure for the distance to that particular border. As we have seen, many experiments concerning the limb formation in vertebrates or of appendages in insects are explicable under this assumption. The dependence of the formation of new structures on borders between pre-existing structures assures a correct spatial relationship of newly formed and existing structures. An arm cannot grow out of the hip region or the body cannot carry two left arms.

On principle, this mode of finer and finer subdivision of a developing embryo can be continued many times over. The interpretation of each sub-pattern creates new borders which, in turn, produce the pattern for the next subdivision. As far as we know for the insects, this mechanism is used twice; once for the primary subdivision into segments and secondly to form the segments of appendages. In the next further subdivision, the sequence of elements within a particular leg segment is formed. Such a intrasegmental pattern seems to be not controlled by a local morphogen concentration but is generated by a mutual activation of neighboring structures. The different elements of the sequence stabilize each other on long range but exclude each other locally. Such a sequence of elements is dynamically stable over a substantial range of sizes and, after an injury, it can be repaired in a self-regulatory process.

Autocatalysis and lateral inhibition, early in development the driving force to initiate pattern formation, seems also to play an essential role during later development. It allows the spacing of repetitive structures such as bristles, hairs, feathers, stomatas or leaves. Depending on the mode of growth and initiation, the spacing can be more or less regular but in any case a minimum and maximum distance between the structures is maintained. This mechanism allows the selection of a small region out of a larger possible area. The precise location where a vein of a leaf should branch can be, for instance, selected in this way. Since this type of pattern formation is based on competition, small external influences can determine which region will dominate over the others.

The mechanisms of pattern formation and cell determination discussed above do not by themselves represent a complete theory of development. For instance, the very important question about how cell proliferation is controlled has been almost completely neglected in this book. Once an adequate theory of growth control is developed, interactions of growth, pattern formation and cell differen-
tiation could be explicitly incorporated into the models.

It was our intention to show that the emergence of pattern during development can be explained by relatively simple, coupled biochemical interactions. All the ingredients used, such as diffusion and the mutual activation and inhibition of biochemical reactions, are known to exist in other biochemical systems. Explanations of a variety of phenomena have been given without additional unreasonable assumptions. Although unequivocal biochemical evidence of the existence of such pattern-forming mechanisms awaits future investigation, calculations have shown the internal consistency of the theory. Many models initially considered were found, by computer simulation, to be unable to account in a quantitative way for some initially chosen basic experimental observations. However, after a model consistent with these particular experiments was developed, it was also found often to be able to account for phenomena for which it was not originally designed. This of course, does not prove the validity of the model. Nonetheless, it does suggest that the models are close to what actually occurs in development.
Chapter 17

Computer programs for the simulation of pattern formation and interpretation

A personal experience with the pattern forming properties of the reactions proposed for the control of development can result from computer simulations made by the readers themselves. For this purpose, a selection of computer programs written in FORTRAN is provided together with some simulations. The general structure of the programs are similar: (i) input of the constants used for the simulation, (ii) calculation of the initial conditions, (iii) computing of the changes of concentrations and (iv) printout of the new distributions. The computation consists of many steps (iterations) in which the concentration change within a short time interval is computed, the change is added to existing concentrations, and the resulting new concentration is used to calculate the next concentration change, and so on. The boundaries of the field of cells are assumed to be impermeable for the substances involved. This is incorporated in the simulations by setting a cell next to a boundary cell at the same concentration as the boundary cell itself. No flux takes place between two cells of identical concentration. Instead of printing long tables of numbers which are difficult to survey, the line printer is used to produce more graphic outputs.

Throughout the simulations, up to 20 constants are used. Their names and usual utilization are listed in table 17.1. The first eight constants are integers and used to select, for instance, the total number of iterations, the limits of the fields, or the type of equation. The remaining constants are used to control the diffusion- and decay rates etc.
Figure 17.1: Table 17.1. Names and utilization of the constants used in the simulations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Usual utilization</th>
<th>Corresponding Symbol</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>IC</td>
<td>Total number of iteration</td>
<td>in equation: 3.2 12.1 15.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>IPR</td>
<td>Printout after each IPR iterations</td>
<td>in program 17.1 17.2 17.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>KX</td>
<td>Limits of the field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>KY</td>
<td>Limits of the field</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>KZ</td>
<td>Selection of initial conditions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>Selection of the reaction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Growth of the field?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>IC</td>
<td>Diffusion of the activator</td>
<td>$D_a$ $D_b$ $D_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>DIA</td>
<td>Diffusion of the inhibitor</td>
<td>$D_a$ $D_b$ $D_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>DIB</td>
<td>Decay rate of the activator</td>
<td>$\mu$ $\alpha$ $\mu$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>TA</td>
<td>Decay rate of the inhibitor</td>
<td>$\nu$ $\beta$ $\nu$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>TB</td>
<td>Basic activator production</td>
<td>$\rho_0$ $\rho_0$ $\rho_0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>QA</td>
<td>Basic inhibitor production</td>
<td>$\rho_1$ $d$ $c_0$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>QAA</td>
<td>Random fluctuation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>QB</td>
<td>Decay rate of the long range help</td>
<td>$\gamma$ $\rho_1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>QBB</td>
<td>Diffusion of the long range help</td>
<td>$D_\gamma$ $\gamma$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>QC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The input of these constants proceed via the subroutine CONST which allows an individual change of the constants during an interactive computer session (see subroutine 17.5). To facilitate the understanding of the programs, some of the printout sections are separated from the main program and given in subroutines. One-dimensional and two-dimensional arrays are plotted with the line printer by the subroutines PLOPP and XYPRIN (program 17.6 and 17.7 respectively). A vertical line between outputs indicate that they appear in an actual output below each other.
C----PROGRAM FOR SIMULATION OF PATTERN FORMATION
C----IN A LINEAR ARRAY OF CELLS
C----A(I) ACTIVATOR, B(I) INHIBITOR, Y(I) SOURCE DENSITY
0001 COMMON/D/, IC,IPR,KX,KY,KZ,IA,IB,I2,IA,DIB,TB,TA,QA+
       10QA,QA,QB,QX,QY,QDF
0002 DIMENSION A(31),B(31),AD(31),BD(31),Y(31)
0003 RAN=RAN(0.0)
0004 150 CALL CONST
C----INITIAL CONDITION
0005 1 AFA=TB/TA+QA/TA ! CONVERSIONS OF THE SEMISTABLE EQUILIBRIUM
0006 BFB=AFA**28,01/TB
0007 WRITE(5,907) AFA,BFB
0008 907 FORMAT (' HOMOGENEOUS ACTIVATOR- AND INHIBITOR CON. ',TF8.5)
0009 DO 140 I=1,31
0010 Y(I)=AFA*(1.40C*FAN(IZYA,IZUB))
0011 A(I)=AFA
0012 B(I)=BFB
0013 140 CONTINUE
0014 A(KK)=AFA*QB
0015 2 ITOT=0
0016 WRITE(5,906)
0017 906 FORMAT (' RELATIVE ACTIVATOR CONCENTR. 
       1AS FUNCTION OF CELL# AND TIME')
0018 IF(KY-KK.LE.14) WRITE(5,910) (IK),IK=KK+KY)
0020 910 FORMAT (' A-MAXIMUM\ \CELL NUMBER':,15I3)
0021 3 CALL PLOPP (A,AM,KK,KY+1,ITOT) ! PRINTOUT
0022 IF (ITOT.GE.0) GOTO 200 ! END OF THE CALCULATION
0024 40 DO 160 IFR=1,IFR ! START OF ITERATIONS
C----BOUNDARY CONDITIONS (IMPERMEABLE)
0025 A(KK-1)=A(KK)
0026 B(KK-1)=B(KK)
0027 A(KK+1)=A(KK)
0028 B(KK+1)=B(KK)
C----REACTIONS (CONCENTR.CHANGE PER ITERATION)
0029 DO 155 I=KK,KY ! SEE EQUATION 3.2
0030 AQ=Y(I)*A(I)**2
0031 AD(I)=AQ/(B(I)-TA*A(I)+DIAB(A(I-1)+H(I+1)-2*A(I)+QA
0032 BD(I)=AQ/(B(I)-TA*A(I)+DIAB(B(I-1)+H(I+1)-2*B(I))+QA
0033 155 CONTINUE
C----ADDATION OF THE CHANGE TO THE EXISTING CONCENTRATIONS
0034 DO 160 I=KK,KY
0035 A(I)=A(I)+AD(I)
0036 B(I)=B(I)+BD(I)
0037 160 CONTINUE
0038 ITOT=ITOT+IFR
0039 GOTO 3
0040 200 WRITE(5,909)
0041 909 FORMAT (' FINAL INHIBITOR DISTRIBUTION, MAX. AND X')
0042 CALL PLOPP (B,AM,KK,KY+2,ITOT)
0043 WRITE (5,908)
0044 908 FORMAT (' SOURCE DENSITY, MAXIMUM AND X')
0045 CALL PLOPP (Y,AM,KK,KY+4,ITOT)
0046 GOTO 150
0047 END

Program 17.1. Pattern formation in a one-dimensional array of cells.
Simulation 17.1. Pattern formation in a one-dimensional array of cells. A stable graded concentration profile is generated out of random fluctuation (see Figs 3.2 and 4.1). Next page, top: the same parameters in a larger field leads to a symmetric distribution (see Fig. 4.1). Below: shorter range (higher decay rate) of the activator and inhibitor leads to a periodic pattern (see Fig. 4.8).
### Homogeneous Activator - and Inhibitor Con. 2.01000 2.02005

**Relative Activator Concentr. As Function of Cell**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A-Maximum</th>
<th>Cell Number</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.01000A</td>
<td>AAAAAAAAAAAA</td>
<td>100100100100100100100100100100100100100100100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0325A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>98 98 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0706A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>95 96 97 98 99 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1373A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>90 92 94 96 99 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2201A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>82 84 86 88 90 92 94 96 98 99 100 100 100 100 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3605A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>70 72 74 76 78 80 82 84 86 88 90 92 94 96 98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6202A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>55 57 59 61 63 65 67 69 71 73 75 77 79 81 83</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9098A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>39 41 43 45 47 49 51 53 55 57 59 61 63 65 67</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1550A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46 48 50 52 54 56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2974A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46 48 50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3622A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>19 21 23 25 27 29 31 33 35 37 39 41 43 45 47</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3884A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>18 20 22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3986A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>18 20 22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4026A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>18 20 22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4041A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>18 20 22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42 44 46</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Final Inhibitor Distribution:**

| Max and % | 65 68 71 74 77 79 82 91 94 97 99 99 99 99 99 |

**Source Density:**

| 0.0102Y | # # # # # # # # # | 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 |

### Homogeneous Activator - and Inhibitor Con. 1.50100 0.15020

**Relative Activator Concentr. As Function of Cell**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A-Maximum</th>
<th>Cell Number</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.50100A</td>
<td>AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA</td>
<td>100100100100100100100100100100100100100100100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5634A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>93 95 97 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7571A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>76 78 80 82 84 86 88 90 92 94 96 98 99 100 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2929A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>43 45 47 49 51 53 55 57 59 61 63 65 67 69 71</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3008A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>14 16 18 20 22 24 26 28 30 32 34 36 38 40 42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6676A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>3.6 3.8 4.0 4.2 4.4 4.6 4.8 5.0 5.2 5.4 5.6 5.8 6.0 6.2 6.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6723A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>3.6 3.8 4.0 4.2 4.4 4.6 4.8 5.0 5.2 5.4 5.6 5.8 6.0 6.2 6.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6923A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>3.6 3.8 4.0 4.2 4.4 4.6 4.8 5.0 5.2 5.4 5.6 5.8 6.0 6.2 6.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6953A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>3.6 3.8 4.0 4.2 4.4 4.6 4.8 5.0 5.2 5.4 5.6 5.8 6.0 6.2 6.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6950A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>3.6 3.8 4.0 4.2 4.4 4.6 4.8 5.0 5.2 5.4 5.6 5.8 6.0 6.2 6.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6950A</td>
<td># # # # # # # # #</td>
<td>3.6 3.8 4.0 4.2 4.4 4.6 4.8 5.0 5.2 5.4 5.6 5.8 6.0 6.2 6.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Final Inhibitor Distribution:**

| Max and % | 66 68 70 72 74 76 78 80 82 84 86 88 90 92 94 96 98 100 100 |

**Source Density:**

| 0.0102Y | # # # # # # # # # | 98 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 99 |

**New Constant:** 8 °C
CHAPTER 17. COMPUTER PROGRAMS

C----- PROGRAM LATERAL ACTIVATION
C----- (GENERATES STRIPES IN A TWO DIMENSIONAL FIELD)
C----- $G_1, G_2(x, y)$ TWO SHORT-RANGING FEEDBACK LOOPS
C----- MADE LOCALLY EXCLUSIVE, E.g., BY COMMON REPRESSOR $R(x, y)$
C----- BOTH HELP EACH OTHER VIA THE LONG RANGING SUBSTANCES $S_1$ OR $S_2$
C----- DIFFERENT INTERACTION CAN BE CHosen BY IB
C----- IB=5 LATERAL INHIBITION MECHANISM FOR COMPARISON
C
0001 DIMENSION $G_1(31,31), G_2(30), UZ(31,31)$
  $(1, R(31,31), S_1(31,31), DS_1(30), DR(30), G_2(31,31), G_2(30),$
  $2S_2(31,31), DS_2(30))$
0002 COMMON /D/ IC, IPK, KK, KY, KZ, IB, IZ, IIA, IIB, TA, TB, OA,
  $10AA, GB, 00B, GC, 00, GE, QF$
0004 RR=RAN(0,0)
0004 150 CALL CONST
0005 50 WRITE (5, 920)
0006 READ(5,931) IZK
0007 IF (IZK.EQ.0) GOTO 150
0009 GOTO (1,2,3,99), IZK
0010 1 GOTO (101,102,103,104,105), IB
C----- calculation of the semistable equilibria
C----- for the different types of reaction
0011 101 WRITE (5, 901) ! MULTIPlicative Help
0012 102 WRITE (5, 902) ! HELP BY SELFInHIBITION
0016 GINIT=TBE/(2*TAE)
0017 RINIT=0.2*GINIT/TB
0018 GOTO 125
0019 103 WRITE (5,903) ! AUTOCatalysis realized by
0020 GINIT=SORT(1.0,00B) ! INHIBITION OF AN INHIBITOR
0021 RINIT=1.
0022 GOTO 125
0023 104 WRITE (5,904) ! STRONG ADDITIVE HELP
0024 GINIT=TBE/(2*TAE)
0025 RINIT=0.2*GINIT**2/TB
0026 GOTO 125
0027 105 WRITE (5,905) ! AUTOCatalysis and lateral InHIBITION
0028 GINIT=00/TAE
0029 SINIT=0.1*GINIT**2/00
0030 GOTO 126
0031 125 SINIT=GINIT
0032 126 DO 140 IY=1, KY ! Initial Condition
0033 DO 140 IX=1, KX ! = SEMistable Equilibrium
0034 $G_1(IX, IY)=GINIT$
0035 $G_2(IX, IY)=GINIT$
0036 $R(IX, IY)=RINIT$
0037 $S_1(IX, IY)=SINIT$
0038 $S_2(IX, IY)=SINIT$
0039 $UZ(IX, IY)=1.0+RAN(1.0, 5.0) * EXP(QF*(IX-1))$
0040 CONTINUE
0041 JY=(KY-1)/2+1
0042 GOTO (141,142), IA ! SELECTION OF THE INITIATION

Program 17.2. Lateral activation.
141 WRITE (5,911) ! HOMOGENEOUS EXCEPT RANDOM FLUCTUATION
142 WRITE (5,912) KX, JY ! LOCAL ADVANTAGE OF GI AT IX, IY=
143 G1(IX,JY)=1.1*GINIT
144 2 ITOT=0
145 3 WRITE (5,933)

C----- PRINTOUT
146 CALL XYPRINT (G1*AM1*IX*1*KY*17*ITOT)
147 IF (IB,ED,5) GOTO 30
148 WRITE (5,934)
149 CALL XYPRINT (G2*AM1*IX*1*KY*18*ITOT)
150 30 IF (ITOT,GE,1) GOTO 50

C----- LOCAL ADJUSTMENTS
151 DGC=1.-TA-4.*DIAM ! LOSS PER ITERATION BY DECAY AND
152 DSC=1.-QN-4.*DE ! DIFFUSION TO THE FOUR NEIGHBOURS
153 DRC=1.-TB ! (REPRESSOR IS NONDIFFUSIBLE)
154 4 DO 160 IF=1.*IFR ! START OF THE ITERATIONS

C----- BOUNDARY CONDITION (IMPERMEABLE)
155 DO 151 IX=1,KX
156 G1(IX,KY+1)=G1(IX,KY) ! LOWER BORDER
157 G2(IX,KY+1)=G2(IX,KY)
158 S1(IX,KY+1)=S1(IX,KY)
159 S2(IX,KY+1)=S2(IX,KY)
160 GS1(IX)=G1(IX+1)
161 DS1(IX)=S1(IX+1)
162 DS2(IX)=S2(IX+1)
163 DO 152 IY=1,KY
164 G1(KX+1,IY)=G1(KX,IY) ! RIGHT BORDER
165 G2(KX+1,IY)=G2(KX,IY)
166 S1(KX+1,IY)=S1(KX,IY)
167 S2(KX+1,IY)=S2(KX,IY)
168 152 G1=01(IY)
169 G2=02(IY)
170 S1=11(IY)
171 S2=12(IY)

C----- REACTION AND FEEDBACK
172 DO 160 IX=1,KX
173 GF=G1(IX,IY)
174 GF=G2(IX,IY)
175 RF=R(IX,IY)
176 SF=S1(IX,IY)
177 SF=S2(IX,IY)
178 DS1=DS1(IX)+G1(IX+1,IY)+G1(IX,IY+1)+G1(IX+1,IY+1)
179 GAIN BY DIFFUSION
180 DS2=DS2(IX)+G2(IX+1,IY)+G2(IX,IY+1)+G2(IX+1,IY+1)
181 FROM THE FOUR
182 DS1=DS1(IX)+S1(IY+1)+S1(IY+1)+S1(IY+1)
183 NEIGHBOURS
184 DS2=DS2(IX)+S2(IY+1)+S2(IY+1)+S2(IY+1)
185 GOTO (201,202,203,204,205),1B
186 201 G10=-01*G1(IX,IY)*GF**2*SF2 ! MULTIPLICATIVE HELP
187 G20=-01*G2(IX,IY)*SF1 ! EQ. 12.1
188 GS1=G1(IX,IY)*GF**2*D1A**2**G1+G1*RF*G0A
189 GS2=G2(IX,IY)*SF2*D1A**2**G2+G2*RF*G0A
189 R(IX,IY)=RF**2**DRC+G10+G20

Program 17.2. (cont.)
Program 17.2. (cont.)
Simulation 17.2. Pattern formation by lateral activation. This page: pattern is initiated by a small advantage of a single cell: stable stripes of high $g_1$ and $g_2$ concentrations are formed (see Fig. 12.2). Next page, top: same constants, initiation by random fluctuation, a stripe-like pattern with random orientation appears (see Fig. 12.2). Bottom next page: for comparison: lateral inhibition (eq. 3.2) leads to a bristle-like pattern (see Fig. 4.9).
CHAPTER 17. COMPUTER PROGRAMS

1. REACTION TYPE: MULTIPLICATIVE HELP
   INITIAL CONDITION: HOMOGENEOUS, EXCEPT RANDOM FLUCTUATION

2. REACTION TYPE: AUTOCATAL. AND LATERAL INHIBITION
   INITIAL CONDITION: HOMOGENEOUS, EXCEPT RANDOM FLUCTUATION

---

500=IC 250=IPR 25=KX 25=KY 0=KZ 1=IA 1=IB 0=IZ
0.0050=DIA 0.0050=DIB 0.0400=TA 0.0600=TB 0.0000=QA 0.0000=QAA
0.0000=QB 0.0000=QBB 0.0200=GC 0.0400=GD 0.2000=GE 0.0000=QGF
? 0=NEW CONSTANTS, 1=START, 2=CONTINUATION, 3=PRINT

---

1000=IC 500=IPR 25=KX 25=KY 0=KZ 1=IA 5=IB 0=IZ
0.0100=DIA 0.0000=DIB 0.0300=TA 0.0600=TB 0.0000=QA 0.0000=QAA
0.0000=QB 0.0000=QBB 0.0200=GC 0.0400=GD 0.2000=GE 0.0000=QGF
? 0=NEW CONSTANTS, 1=START, 2=CONTINUATION, 3=PRINT

---

(Computer program code and output are visible in the image, but not transcribed here.)
C----PROGRAM COMPARTMENT (CREATES A SUPERPOSITION OF A PERIODIC
C----AND A SEQUENTIAL PATTERN (COMARTMENTS AND GENE ACTIVITIES)
C----G(I,IG) GENE ACTIVATOR, I=POSITION, IG=GENE
C----GEREPR(I) COMMON REPRESSOR OF THE GENE ACTIVATORS
C----DUE TO HIERARCHY X(IG), GEREPR ACTS AS POS.VALUE
C----GTRANS(I) INDUCES TRANSITION FROM GENE #I TO #I+1
C----A(I)+P(I) ANTERIOR AND POSTERIOR DETERMINATION
C----RAP(I) COMMON REPRESSOR OF A(I) AND P(I)
C----SA(I)+SP(I) LONG RANGE MUTUAL HELP OF THE TWO COMARTMENTS
C----POSINF(I) POSITIONAL INFORMATION (MORPHOGEN GRADIENT)

COMMON/B/ IC,IPR,KK,KZ,IA,IB,IZ,DIA,DIB,TA,TB,GA,
        10AA,0B,0BB,0C,0D,0E,0F
DIMENSION POSINF(30),A(32),RAP(32),P(31),SA(31),SP(30)
        1,0(31,10),GTRANS(31,10),GEREPR(31),X(31)
        1,TY(20),TYA(30),TYP(30)
DATA TY,'X','Y','Z','X','Y','Z','X','Y','Z','X','Y','Z',
        1'C','Y','X','N','P','S','C',/}
150 CALL CONST(11)
50 WRITE (5,920)
920 FORMAT ('?',0=NEW CONST,1=START,2=CONTINUATION,3=PRINT,4=END')
READ(5,960) IZK
IF(IZK.EQ.0) GOTO 150
GOTO (1,2,210,99),IZK
C-----INITIAL CONDITION
1 AINIT=TB/(2.*TA) ! SEMISTABLE EQUILIBRIUM
1012 RAPIN=.02*AINIT/TB
1013 DO 100 I=1,30
1014 X(I)=.01*EXP(-.3*FLOAT (I-1)) ! HIERARCHY OF THE GENES
1015 POSINF(I)=DF*EXP(10*FLOAT(I-1)) ! POSITIONAL INFORMATION
1016 IF(OF.LT.0) POSINF(I)=0 ! FOR BICAUDAL
1017 -DF*EXP(.05*FLOAT(I-1))-OF*EXP(.05*FLOAT(KZ-I))
1018 P(I)=AINIT ! INITIALLY, ALL CELLS
1019 A(I)=0 ! ARE POSTERIOR
1020 RAP(I)=RAPIN
1021 SA(I)=0.1
1022 SF(I)=AINIT
1023 B(I+1)=1.5 ! ONLY GENE #I IS "ON"
1024 GEREPR(I)='.01*.3/2**2
1025 TYA(I)=TY(1)
1026 DO 100 IF=2,10
1027 B(I+IF)=0, ! OTHER GENES ARE OFF
1028 GTRANS(I+IF)=0,
1029 100 CONTINUE
1030 WRITE (5,905)
1031 905 FORMAT ('/X' POSITIONAL INFORMATION IN THE CELL 1,...,KX')
1032 WRITE (5,906) (POSINF(IL),IL=1,KX)
1033 WRITE (5,911)
1034 911 FORMAT ('/X' GENE-ACTIVATOR AS FUNCTION OF POSITION (X) AND GENE #
1035 WRITE (5,913)
1036 913 FORMAT ('INITIALLY, ONLY GENE #1 IS ACTIVE IN EVERY CELL,'/
1037 ITOT=0
1038 CALL XPTRITION(G,AM,1,KX,1,XY,10,ITOT) ! PLOT OF GENE-ACTIVATORS
1039 IF (IA.NE.2) GOTO 2

Program 17.3. Compartment.
A(I)=A(I)+1 ! IN PROGRESS-ZONE MODEL
0042 P(I)=0.1 ! LEFTMOST CELL IS ANTERIOR
0043 2 ITOT=0
0044 IGROW=0
0045 DAC=1.-TA
0046 BDC=-1.-TB ! LOSS PER ITERATION BY DECAY
0047 DSA=1.-GD-2.*DIA !(AND BY DIFFUSION)
0048 DSB=1.-GD-2.*DIB
0049 WRITE (5,907)
C-----PREPARATION OF THE PRINTOUT OF THE ANTERIOR-POSTERIOR DISTRIBUTION
0050 3 DO 20 I=1,NI
0051 NA=A(I)+0.11
0052 TYA(I)=TYA(NA)
0053 IFP=IF(I)+0.511
0054 20 TYP(I)=TYA(IFP)
0055 TY(AH(I))=TY(AH)
0056 WRITE (5,910) ITOT,TY(AH(I)),TYA(IK),IM=1,30
0057 IF (ITOT.GE.10) GO TO 210 ! END OF CALCULATION IS REACHED
0058 IF (ITOL.GE.0.AND.IGROW.GE.100) GO TO 500 ! USED IF FIELD IS GROWING
0059 30 DO 100 ICC=1,IFR ! BEGIN OF THE ITERATION
0060 SAC=SIC(1)
0061 SP=SP(I)
0062 100 SA(I)=SA(I)
0063 10 SP(I)=SP(I)
0064 20 SP(I)=SP(I)
0065 ! C------INTERACTION OF 'ANTERIOR' AND 'POSTERIOR'
0066 C------LEADING TO OSCILLATIONS AND STRIPES
0067 DO 90 I=1,NI
0068 AF=A(I)
0069 RF=RAF(I)
0070 PF=P(I)
0071 SAF=SA(I)
0072 SPF=SP(I)
0073 THRESH=QD/POSINF(I)+GERF(R(I)) ! DETERMINES THRESHOLD FOR
0074 RAF=.01*AF**2/(SAF+THRESH) ! A FURTHER OSCILLATION
0075 PIF=.01*PF**2/SPF ! MUTUAL HELP OF ANT. AND POST. BY SELF-
0076 A(I)=AF*DAC+AGF+RF+GA ! INHIBITION, SEE EQUATION 12.2
0077 RAF=RAF+DAC+AF+DIH(SA(I)+SA(I))
0078 SP(I)=SPF*DF+DIF*IF(1)+SP(I)
0079 90 GOTO 80
0080 80 SA(I)=SA(I) ! ORIGINAL CONCENTRATION AT I IS USED AS CONCENTRATION
0081 SP(I)=SP(I) ! OF THE LEFT NEIGHBOUR AT POSITION IH
0082 C------MAINTENANCE OF THE GENE ACTIVITY AND TRANSITION TO THE NEXT GENE
0083 RESUM=0. ! SEE EQUATION 11.3 AND 11.4
0084 GEREPR=GERF(R(I))
0085 DO 87 IGE=1,IKY
0086 G(I)=G(I)
0087 G(I)=G(I)
0088 IF (IGE>2) G(I)=G(I)*G(I)*G(I)/PF ! RIOR COMPARTMENT
0089 G(I)=G(I)*QF!TRANS(I,1-1)/PF ! RIOR COMPARTMENT
0090 87 G(I)=G(I)
0091 G(I)=G(I)
0092 RESUM=RESUM+0Q

Program 17.3. (cont.)
C----- MOLECULES INDUCING TRANSITION ARE PRODUCED ONLY
C----- IN THE STATE 'POSTERIOR'
0093 GTRANS(I,IG)=GTRANS(I,IG)*(1.-QBB)+QBB*PF*G(I,IG)
0094 87 CONTINUE
0095 GEREPR(I)=.7*GEREPR+RESUM  !LOSS BY DECAY OF GENE REPRESSOR
0096 90 CONTINUE 1 + SUM OF THE NEW PRODUCTION
0097 100 CONTINUE
0098 4 ITOT=ITOT+IPR
0099 IGROW=IGROW+1
0100 GOTO 3
0101 210 WRITE (5,911)
0102 CALL XYPRIN (G,A,M,1,KX,1,KY,10,ITOT) !PLOT OF GENE-ACTIVATORS
0103 WRITE (5,917)
0104 WRITE (5,918) TY(I1),(TYA(IK),IK=1,KX),TY(I1)
0105 WRITE (5,918) TY(I1),(TYB(IK),IK=1,KX),TY(I1)
0106 WRITE (5,912)
0107 912 FORMAT (' MOLECULES INDUCING TRANSITION ARE PRODUCED ONLY'/'
1 IN THE POSTERIOR COMPARTMENT OF EACH SEGMENT')
0108 CALL XYPRIN (GTRANS,A,M,1,KX,1,KY,6,ITOT)
0109 GOTO 50
0110 500 KX=KX+1  !GROWTH OF THE FIELD AT THE RIGHT MARGIN
0111 IGROW=0
0112 A(KX)=A(KX-1)
0113 P(KX)=P(KX-1)
0114 RAP(KX)=RAP(KX-1)
0115 SA(KX)=SA(KX-1)
0116 SP(KX)=SP(KX-1)
0117 GEREPR(KX)=GEREPR(KX-1)
0118 DO 501 IG=1,KY
0119 GTRANS(KX,IG)=GTRANS(KX-1,IG)
0120 501 G(KX,IG)=G(KX-1,IG)
0121 GOTO 30
0122 99 I=0
0123 906 FORMAT (13F5.2)
0124 907 FORMAT (' ANTERIOR' (LEFT) AND COMPLEMENTARY 'POSTERIOR' AS'
1/ FUNCTION OF POSITION (X) AND TIME (ITERATIONS)')
0125 910 FORMAT (1X,I6,2X,7OA1)
0126 917 FORMAT (' DISTRIBUTION OF HIGH A AND HIGH P')
0127 918 FORMAT (1X,3OA1)
0128 960 FORMAT (I6)
0129 END

Simulation 17.3. Next three pages: Interpretation of positional information: formation of periodic pattern of anterior and posterior compartmental specifications and, in register, the activation and particular control genes. Normal monotonic gradient, symmetric gradient (see Fig. 14.5) and pattern formation in an area of marginal growth (see Fig. 14.8).
CHAPTER 17. COMPUTER PROGRAMS

C PROGRAM BRANCH (GENERATES A NETLIKE STRUCTURE)
C-----A(I,X,Y)=ACTIVATOR, B(I,X,Y)=INHIBITOR
C-----S(I,X,Y)=DEPLETED SUBSTANCE, Y(I,X,Y)=DIFFERENTIATION
C
COMM/D/ IC,ICR,KX,KY,KZ,IA,IB,IZ,DIA,DIB,TA,TB,DA,
          QA,QB,QBB,QC,GB,GE,GF
0001  DIMENSION A(31,31),B(31,31),S(31,31),Y(31,31)
0002     VZ(31,31),YV(31,31),TB(30,30),TB(30,30),Y(31,31),TYP(31),TYS(31)
0003     DATA T/,'/1', ',', 'A', ',', 'G', ',', '1', '/', 'TYS/31*=''/
0004     RN=RAN(0.0)
0005
0150 CALL CONST
0006  50 WRITE (5,920)
0007     READ(5,931) IZK
0008     IF(IZK.EQ.0) GOTO 150
0010     GOTO (1,2,3,99),IZK
0011
C-----INITIAL CONDITION
0012  1 DO 140 IY=1,30
0013  2 DO 140 IX=1,30
0014     A(I,X,Y)=0.01   ! ACTIVATION OF THE CELL IS LOW
0015     VZ(I,X,Y)=INT(1.0,CA*IRANZ,IRANZ))
0016     Y(I,X,Y)=0.001   ! CELLS ARE NOT DIFFERENTIATED
0017     S(I,X,Y)=1.
0018     B(I,X,Y)=0.01
0019     140 CONTINUE
0020     WRITE (5,900)
0021     10 WRITE (5,933) ITOT
0022     ITO=0
0023     3 WRITE (5,933) ITO
0024
C-----PRINTOUT
0025     TYP(KX+1)=TY(6)
0026     TYP(1)=TY(6)
0027     WRITE (5,934) (TY(YS,IL),IL=1,KX+1)
0028     DO 170 IY=2,30
0029     DO 171 IX=2,KX
0030     TYP(IX)=TY(1)
0031     IF (S(I,X,Y).GT.0.85) TYP(IX)=TY(3)
0032     IF (A(I,X,Y).GT.0.85) TYP(IX)=TY(4)
0033     IF (Y(I,X,Y).GT.0.85) TYP(IX)=TY(5)
0034     171 CONTINUE
0035     170 WRITE (5,934) (TY(YS,IL),IL=1,KX+1)
0036     WRITE (5,934) (TY(YS,IL),IL=1,KX+1)
0037     IF (ITOT.GE.IC) GOTO 150
0038     DAT=1.-TA*4.*DIA   ! LOSS BY DECAY AND DIFFUSION
0039     DBT=1.-TB*4.*DIB   ! IN EACH ITERATION
0040     DSC=1.-QB*S.*GE
0041     DYC=1.-IC
0042     40 DO 160 IP=1,IPR
0043     50 DO 151 IX=2,KX
0044     A(I,X,KY)=A(I,X,KY)
0045     B(I,X,KY)=B(I,X,KY)
0046     S(I,X,KY)=S(I,X,KY)
0047     A(I,X,Y)=A(I,X,Y)
0048     151 CONTINUE
0049     160 CONTINUE
0050
C-----BOUNDARY CONDITION (IMPERMEABLE)
0051     DO 151 IX=2,KX
0052     A(I,X,KY)=A(I,X,KY)
0053     B(I,X,KY)=B(I,X,KY)
0054     S(I,X,KY)=S(I,X,KY)
0055     A(I,X,Y)=A(I,X,Y)
0056     151 CONTINUE
0057

Program 17.4. Branch (generates a net-like structure).
$S(IX+1)=S(IX+2) \quad 0050$

DO 152 IY=2, KY \quad 0052

$A(IX+1, IY)=A(IX, IY) \quad 0053$

$A(IY)=A(2, IY) \quad 0054$

$S(KX+1, IY)=S(KX, IY) \quad 0055$

$S(IY)=S(2, IY) \quad 0056$

$B(KX+1, IY)=B(KX, IY) \quad 0057$

B(1, IY)=B(2, IY) \quad 0058$

C-----DIFFUSION \quad 0059

DO 10 IX=2, KY \quad 0060

DA(IX, IY)=A(IX+1, IY)+A(IX, IY+1)+A(IX-1, IY)+A(IX+1, IY) \quad 0061

DB(IX, IY)=S(IX+1, IY)+S(IX, IY+1)+S(IX, IY-1)+S(IX+1, IY) \quad 0062

DR(IX, IY)=B(IX+1, IY)+B(IX+1, IY)+B(IX, IY-1)+B(IX, IY) \quad 0063

10 CONTINUE \quad 0064

C-----REACTION \quad 0065

DO 160 IX=2, KY \quad 0066

AF=AF(IX, IY) \quad 0067

SF=S(IX, IY) \quad 0068

BF=BF(IX, IY) \quad 0069

YF=Y(IX, IY) \quad 0070

AO=AF*SF*VZ(IX, IY); \quad \text{SEE EQU. 15.1} \quad 0071

YF=YF#2 \quad 0072

EG=AO*BF+OXYF \quad 0073

A(IX+1, IY)=AF*DA+DIA*DA(IX, IY)+DO \quad 0074

(EQU. 15.1a)

B(IX+1, IY)=BF*DB+DIB*DB(IX, IY)+AQ+QD#YF+.0002 \quad 0075

(EQU. 15.1b)

S(IX, IY)=SF*DSC+GFC*DSC(IX, IY)+QF#SF#YF+QBB \quad 0076

(EQU. 15.1c)

Y(IX+1, IY)=YF*YZC+YZC/(1+9.0yz)+OB+AF+.0001 \quad 0077

(EQU. 15.1c)

160 CONTINUE \quad 0078

163 IT0=IT0+IPR \quad 0079

GOTO 3 \quad 0080

IF=0 \quad 0081

99 FORMAT ('INITIAL CONDITION: ONE DIFFERENTIATED CELL ($$' \quad 0082

1', '....' \quad \text{S}>.8S' \quad \text{AAA} = A>.8S' \quad \text{***} \quad \text{Y}>.8S' \quad \text{///}) \quad 0083

920 FORMAT ('\? 0=NEW CONSTANTS, 1=START, 2=CONTINUE, 3=PRINT, 4=END') \quad 0084

931 FORMAT (16) \quad 0085

933 FORMAT (16, ' ITERATIONS') \quad 0086

934 FORMAT ('33A1') \quad 0087

END \quad 0087
Simulation 17.4. Formation of net-like structures (see Figs 15.2 and 15.5).
SUBROUTINE CONST
COMMON/1, IPR*X, KY, KZ, IA, IB, IZ, DIA, DIB, TA, TB, QA,
QB, QBB, QC, QGD, QGE, QGF
DIMENSION ID(8), D(20), DT(20)
EQUIVALENCE (ID(1), I), (D(1), DIA)
DATA DT(1)'IC', 'IPR', 'KY', 'KZ', 'IA', 'IB', 'IZ', 'I',
'IDIA', 'DIB', 'TA', 'TB', 'QA', 'QBB', 'QB', 'QC', 'QGD', 'QGE'2,'QGF'/
5 WRITE(5,910)
READ(5,909) IS
10 IF (IS.EQ.0) GOTO 600 ! RETURN TO MAIN PROGRAM
11 IF (IS.LE.8) GOTO 80 ! INPUT INTEGER CONSTANT 1-8
12 IF (IS.LE.20) GOTO 100 ! INPUT FLOATING POINT CONST. 9-20
14 IF (IS.EQ.22) CALL EXIT ! PROGRAM TERMINATION
GOTO 600
80 WRITE (5,909) DT(IS), ID(IS)
READ (5,900) ID(IS) ! INPUT INTEGER CONSTANT
GOTO 5
100 WRITE (5,910) DT(IS), D(IS-B)
READ (5,902) D(IS-B) ! INPUT FLOATING POINT CONST.
GOTO 5
600 WRITE (5,906) (ID(IK), DT(IK), IK=1,8)
WRITE (5,907) (D(IK-B), DT(IK), IK=9,20)
RETURN
900 FORMAT (16)
902 FORMAT (F10.4)
905 FORMAT (' NEW CONSTANT $', $)
906 FORMAT (2(I8,'=','A3'), 6(I8,'=','A3'))
907 FORMAT (6(F8.4,'=','A3'), 6(F8.4,'=','A3'))
908 FORMAT (16,$)
909 FORMAT ('+', 'A3', ' OLD =', 'I8', ' NEW =? ', $)
910 FORMAT ('+', 'A3', ' OLD =', 'F8.4', ' NEW =? ', $)
END

Example:

\[ \begin{array}{llllllllllllllllllllllllllll}
6000=IC & 2000=IPR & 18=KX & 18=KY & 0=KZ & 0=IA & 0=IB & 0=IZ & \\
0.0200=DIA & 0.2000=DIB & 0.1200=TA & 0.0400=TB & 0.0400=QA & 0.0.0400=QAA & \\
0.0014=QB & 0.0200=QBB & 0.0300=QC & 0.0003=QD & 0.0600=QGE & 0.2000=QGF & \\
? & NEW CONSTANTS: & 1=START, & 2=CONTINUE, & 3=PRINT, & 4=END & \\
\end{array} \]

NEW CONSTANT $ 9
DIA OLD = 0.0200 NEW =? .01
NEW CONSTANT $ 12
TB OLD = 0.0400 NEW =? .06
NEW CONSTANT $ 0

\[ \begin{array}{llllllllllllllllllllllllllll}
6000=IC & 2000=IPR & 18=KX & 18=KY & 0=KZ & 0=IA & 0=IB & 0=IZ & \\
0.0100=DIA & 0.2000=DIB & 0.1200=TA & 0.0600=TB & 0.0400=QA & 0.0040=QAA & \\
0.0014=QB & 0.0200=QBB & 0.0300=QC & 0.0003=QD & 0.0600=QGE & 0.2000=QGF & \\
? & NEW CONSTANTS: & 1=START, & 2=CONTINUE, & 3=PRINT, & 4=END & \\
\end{array} \]

Subroutine 17.5. CONST. Allows to change constants individually. Input: constant No. (see Table 17.1) and the new constant. In the example, const. No. 9 and 12 have been changed, see arrows. Constant No. 0 leads to a printout of all 20 constants and to a return into the main program.
In a batchwise computing, the line CALL CONST may be substituted by the following lines (subroutine CONST is then not required).

```
READ(IF1M,931) IC,IPRINT,KX,KY,KZ,IA,IB,IZ,DIA,DIB,TA,TB,QA,
1 QA,TB,GB,GC,TD,OE,GF
WRITE (5,931) IC,IPRINT,KX,KY,KZ,IA,IB,IZ,DIA,DIB,TA,TB,QA,
1 QA,TB,GB,GC,TD,OE,GF
931 FORMAT(1X,216,6I3,/,1X,6F8.4,/,1X,6F8.4)
```

```
0001 SUBROUTINE PLOPP (A,AM,KA,KS,IO)
C PRINTS THE CONTENT OF A ONE-DIMENSIONAL ARRAY
C IN A SINGLE LINE ON A LINE-PRINTER
C RELATIVE VALUES, A=ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM
0002 DIMENSION A(1),TY(16),AP(31),M(15)
0003 DATA TY/' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ',' ','A','B','
0004 APL=TY(IO+10)
0005 AM=100000.
0006 DO 100 I=KA,KS ! DETERMINATION OF THE MAXIMUM
0007 IF (A(I).LT.AM) GOTO 100
0009 AM=A(I)
0010 CONTINUE
0011 AMX=10./(AM+.0000001)
0012 AMXX=100./(AM+.00000001)
0013 IF (KS-KA+1.GT.15) GOTO 305
0015 DO 110 IX=1,15
0016 110 AP(IX)=TY(1)
0017 305 DO 320 IX=KA,KS
0018 N=A(IX)*AMXX+1.0001
0019 IF (N.LE.0) N=16
0021 IF (KS.LE.15) M(IX)=A(IX)*AMXX+.5
0023 320 AP(IX)=TY(N)
0024 IF (KS.GT.15) GOTO 310
0026 210 WRITE(5,987) AM,AP*(AP(1),IJ=1,15),M(IX),IK=KA+KS)
0027 RETURN
0028 310 WRITE(5,986) AM,AP*(AP(IX),IX=1,KS)
0029 RETURN
0030 986 FORMAT (1X,6F8.4,A1,1X,6D0A1)
0031 987 FORMAT (1X,6F8.4,A1,1X,15A1,1X,15I3)
0032 END
```

**Subroutine 17.6. PLOPP.** The content of a one-dimensional array is plotted in one line with the line printer. The first number is the maximum value, followed by a letter indicating the plot (e.g., A = activator). The blackness of the symbols indicates the relative concentration. The integer numbers are the relative values in % of the maximum (see Simulation 17.1).
0001 SUBROUTINE XYPRT (A,AM,KAX,KK,KAY,KY,IO,ITOT)
C-----PROGRAM FOR XY- PLOT OF A TWO-DIMENSIONAL ARRAY
C-----WITH A LINE PRINTER
C IN THE PLOTT, SYMBOLS < , , ,+ > ARE USED FOR 0-10%, 10-20%,...
C RELATIVE VALUES, A=ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM
C A: ARRAY TO BE PLOTTED
C AM: CONTAINS AFTER A CALL THE MAXIMUM OF A
C KAX,KK: FIRST AND LAST ELEMENT OF THE X AXIS
C KAY,KY: FIRST AND LAST ELEMENT OF THE Y AXIS
C IO: IDENTIFICATION OF THE PLOT
C E.O. IO=11 = PLOT IS FRAMED BY LETTER A
C ITOT: TRANSFERRED TO THE PLOTT, TOTAL NUMBER OF ITERATION
C
0002 DIMENSION A(31,31),TY(20),M(31),AP(34)
0003 DATA TY/**,*,**,1/,' ','$',+',',',',+',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',',','.
0004 9 AM=-1000.
0005 DO 10 IX=KAX,KK
0006 DO 10 IY=KAY,KY
0007 IF (A(IX,IY).GT.AM) AM=A(IX,IY)
0008 10 CONTINUE
0009 12 WRITE(5,900) ITOT,AM
0010 IF (AM.LT.0.0000001) RETURN
0011 AMX=10./AM
0012 NXX=KK-KAX+3
0013 DO 210 IX=1,NXX
0014 AP(IX)=TY(1)
0015 DO 212 IY=1,NX
0016 210 AP(IX)=TY(IY)
0017 DO 212 IY=1,NX
0018 212 AP(IX)=TY(IY)
0019 IF (IX-KAX.LT.16) GOTO 215
0020 WRITE(5,985)(AP(IX),IX=1,NX) !UPPER MARGIN OF THE PLOTT
0021 GOTO 220
0022 215 WRITE(5,945)(AP(IJ),IJ=1,22),(I,I),IK=KAX,KK)
0023 220 DO 226 IY=KAY,KY
0024 225 IXX=2
0025 DO 224 IX=KAX,KX
0026 N=A(IX,IY)*AMX*1.0001 ! N=10,..,11, DEPPENDING ON RELATIVE VALUE
0027 IF (N.LE.0) N=16 ! SELECTS PLOTT SYMBOL
0028 M(IX)=A(IX,IY) #100./AM+.5 ! RELATIVE VALUES IN %
0029 AP(IX)=TY(N)
0030 224 IXX=IXX+1
0031 AP(IX)=TY(IY)
0032 AP(NX)=TY(IY)
0033 IF (IX-KAX,LT.16) GOTO 225
0034 WRITE(5,985)(AP(IX),IX=1,NX) ! LOWER MARGIN OF THE PLOTT
0035 GOTO 226
0036 225 WRITE(5,945)(AP(IJ),IJ=1,22),(I,I),IK=KAX,KK)
0037 226 CONTINUE
0041 DO 330 IX=1,NX
0042 330 AP(IX)=TY(IY)
0043 WRITE(5,985)(AP(IX),IX=1,NX)
0044 RETURN
0045 900 FORMAT(X,I5,ITERATION=,MAXIMUM=,'F6.2)
0046 945 FORMAT (I5,22A1,16I3)
0047 985 FORMAT (I5,34A1)
0048 END

Subroutine 17.7. XYPRT: Produces a plot of a two-dimensional array on a line printer. Each symbol represents one cell, the blackness indicates relative concentration, see Simulations 17.2 and 17.3.
References


